

Ratings: Moody's: "Aaa"  
Fitch: "AAA"  
(See "RATINGS" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL  
FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein)

**OFFICIAL STATEMENT**  
**Dated: October 17, 2019**

**NEW ISSUE: BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY**

*In the opinion of Bond Counsel (defined below), assuming continuing compliance by the District (defined below) after the date of initial delivery of the Bonds (defined below) with certain covenants contained in the Order (defined below) and subject to the matters set forth under "TAX MATTERS" herein, interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.*

**\$16,875,000**  
**NEW CANEY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Montgomery and Harris Counties, Texas)**  
**Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019**

**Dated Date: November 1, 2019**

**Due: February 15, as shown on the inside cover page**

The New Caney Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Chapters 1207 and 1371, as amended, Texas Government Code (together, the "Act") and an order (the "Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds adopted on June 17, 2019 by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the New Caney Independent School District (the "District"). As permitted by the provisions of the Act, the Board, in the Order, delegated to certain District officials and staff members (each, a Designated Financial Officer) the authority to establish final terms and effectuate the sale of the Bonds, which final terms shall be evidenced in an approval certificate (the "Approval Certificate") relating to the Bonds. The Approval Certificate was executed by a Designated Financial Officer of the District on October 17, 2019, which completed the sale of the Bonds. The Bonds are payable as to principal and interest from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied annually, without legal limit as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date specified above and will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing February 15, 2020, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in principal denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Principal of the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, which initially is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds for payment. Interest on the Bonds is payable by check dated as of the interest payment date and mailed by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners as shown on the records of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the close of business as of the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date (the "Record Date").

The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"). Such Book-Entry-Only System will affect the method and timing of payment and the method of transfer of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM").

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "PLAN OF FINANCING - Purpose", "PLAN OF FINANCING - Refunded Bonds" and "Schedule I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2030 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Redemption").

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**  
(On Inside Cover)

*The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued, and received by the initial purchaser named below (the "Underwriters") subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. Certain legal matters will be passed upon for the Underwriters by their counsel, Hunton Andrews Kurth LLP, Houston, Texas. The Bonds are expected to be available for initial delivery through the services of DTC on or about November 19, 2019.*

**OPPENHEIMER & CO.**

**PIPER JAFFRAY & CO.**

**WELLS FARGO SECURITIES**

**\$16,875,000**  
**NEW CANEY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Montgomery and Harris Counties, Texas)**  
**UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**  
Base CUSIP No.: 643154<sup>(1)</sup>

<b>Maturity Date 2/15</b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Initial Yield</b>	<b>CUSIP No. Suffix<sup>(1)</sup></b>
2024	\$ 670,000	5.00%	1.26	FF9
2025	705,000	5.00	1.30	FG7
2026	735,000	5.00	1.37	FH5
2027	775,000	5.00	1.44	FJ1
2028	815,000	5.00	1.50	FK8
2029	865,000	5.00	1.59	FL6
2030	895,000	3.00	1.82 <sup>(2)</sup>	FM4
2031	240,000	3.00	2.03 <sup>(2)</sup>	FN2
2032	245,000	3.00	2.17 <sup>(2)</sup>	FP7
2033	255,000	3.00	2.28 <sup>(2)</sup>	FQ5
2034	1,650,000	3.00	2.32 <sup>(2)</sup>	FR3
2035	1,700,000	3.00	2.40 <sup>(2)</sup>	FS1
2036	1,750,000	3.00	2.46 <sup>(2)</sup>	FT9
2037	1,805,000	3.00	2.50 <sup>(2)</sup>	FU6
2038	1,860,000	3.00	2.54 <sup>(2)</sup>	FV4
2039	1,910,000	3.00	2.58 <sup>(2)</sup>	FW2

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

<sup>(1)</sup> CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of The American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Underwriters are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

<sup>(2)</sup> Yield calculated based on the assumption that the Bonds denoted and sold at a premium will be redeemed on August 15, 2029, the first optional call date for such Bonds, at a redemption price of par, plus accrued interest to the redemption date.

## NEW CANEY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

### BOARD OF TRUSTEES

<u>Name</u>	<u>Date Initially Elected</u>	<u>Current Term Expires (November)</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Chad Turner, President	2012	2021	Business Owner
Creg Mixon, Vice President	2014	2020	Purchasing
Elizabeth Rhoden Harrell, Secretary	2017	2020	Insurance Agent
Ty Trout, Assistant Secretary	2016	2019	Construction
Beth Prykryl, Member	2016	2019	Lawyer
Wendy Sharp, Member	2018	2021	Nurse Practitioner
Ricky Warwick, Member	2018	2021	Police Officer

### APPOINTED OFFICIALS

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Length of Education Service</u>	<u>Length of Service with District</u>
Kenn Franklin	Superintendent	31 Years	10 Years
Matt Calvert	Deputy Superintendent	15 Years	4 Years
Brandy Fain	Executive Director of Finance	19 Years	15 Years
Mike Milling	Executive Director of Operations	28 Years	6 Years
Steve Freeman	Executive Director of Human Resources	39 Years	16 Years
Kristi Shofner	Executive Director of Instruction	25 Years	5 Years
Scott Castleberry	Executive Director of Student and Staff Services	31 Years	31 Years
Brent Sipe	Executive Director of Sports Activities and Facilities	27 Years	6 Years
Dr. Scott Powers	Executive Director of Public Relations	21 Years	4 Years
Merredith Hunt	Director of Accounting and Budget	12 Years	6 Years

### CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Plano, Texas	Financial Advisor
Weaver and Tidwell, L.L.P., Conroe, Texas	Certified Public Accountants

For additional information, contact:

Kenn Franklin  
Superintendent  
New Caney ISD  
21580 Loop 494  
New Caney, Texas 77357  
(281) 577-8611

Doug Whitt / Brian Grubbs / Robert White  
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.  
5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210  
Plano, Texas 75024  
(214) 765-1469  
(214) 279-8683 (Fax)

## USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page, Schedule I and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized to give information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon.

The Underwriters have provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriters have reviewed the information in the Official Statement pursuant to its responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws, but the Underwriters do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District and other sources believed to be reliable, but such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as the promise or guarantee of the District, the Financial Advisor or the Underwriters. This Official Statement contains, in part, estimates and matters of opinion which are not intended as statements of fact, and no representation is made as to the correctness of such estimates and opinions, or that they will be realized.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District or other matters described herein. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF CONTINUING DISCLOSURE UNDERTAKING" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency and the District, respectively to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE UNDERWRITERS MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THE BONDS AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

NONE OF THE DISTRICT, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE UNDERWRITERS MAKE ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM DESCRIBED UNDER "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" OR THE AFFAIRS OF THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY DESCRIBED UNDER "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM", AS SUCH INFORMATION WAS PROVIDED BY THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY AND THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY, RESPECTIVELY.

THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT CONTAINS "FORWARD-LOOKING" STATEMENTS WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 21E OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED. SUCH STATEMENTS MAY INVOLVE KNOWN AND UNKNOWN RISKS, UNCERTAINTIES AND OTHER FACTORS WHICH MAY CAUSE THE ACTUAL RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS TO BE DIFFERENT FROM THE FUTURE RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED BY SUCH FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. INVESTORS ARE CAUTIONED THAT THE ACTUAL RESULTS COULD DIFFER MATERIALLY FROM THOSE SET FORTH IN THE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THE ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING SCHEDULE I AND ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

<p>SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT ..... 1</p> <p>INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT ..... 2</p> <p>PLAN OF FINANCING..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Purpose ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Refunded Bonds ..... 2</p> <p>THE BONDS ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">General Description ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Authority for Issuance ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Redemption ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Security ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Permanent School Fund Guarantee ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Legality..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Payment Record ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Amendments ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Defeasance ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Sources and Uses of Funds ..... 4</p> <p>REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES ..... 4</p> <p>BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM ..... 5</p> <p>REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE ..... 6</p> <p>THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM ..... 7</p> <p>STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS ..... 19</p> <p>Schedule of Refunded Bonds ..... Schedule I</p> <p>Financial Information of the District ..... Appendix A</p> <p>General Information Regarding the District and Its Economy ..... Appendix B</p> <p>Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel..... Appendix C</p> <p>Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018..... Appendix D</p>	<p>CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM .....19</p> <p>AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES .....23</p> <p>TAX RATE LIMITATIONS .....25</p> <p>THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT .....27</p> <p>EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS.....27</p> <p>RATINGS.....28</p> <p>LEGAL MATTERS.....28</p> <p>TAX MATTERS .....28</p> <p>INVESTMENT POLICIES.....29</p> <p>REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE...31</p> <p>FINANCIAL ADVISOR.....31</p> <p>LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS.....32</p> <p>CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION .....32</p> <p>VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS .....33</p> <p>LITIGATION.....33</p> <p>FORWARD LOOKING STATEMENTS .....33</p> <p>UNDERWRITING .....34</p> <p>CONCLUDING STATEMENT.....34</p>
---	--

## SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without this entire Official Statement.

<b>The District</b>	The New Caney Independent School District (the "District") is a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Montgomery and Harris Counties, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
<b>The Bonds</b>	The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$16,875,000 pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including particularly Chapters 1207 and 1371, as amended, Texas Government Code (together, the "Act") and the order (the "Order") adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on June 17, 2019. As permitted by the provisions of the Act, the Board, in the Order, delegated certain District officials and staff members (each, a "Designated Financial Officer") the authority to establish final terms and effectuate the sale of the Bonds, which final terms shall be evidenced in an approval certificate (the "Approval Certificate") relating to the Bonds. The Approval Certificate was executed by a Designated Financial Officer on October 17, 2019, which completed the sale of the Bonds. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "PLAN OF FINANCING - Purpose", "PLAN OF FINANCING - Refunded Bonds" and "Schedule I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").
<b>Paying Agent/Registrar</b>	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. The District intends to use the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein).
<b>Security</b>	The Bonds will constitute direct obligations of the District, payable as to principal and interest from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property located within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. Payments of principal and interest on the Bonds will be further secured by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of Texas. (See "THE BONDS – Security", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").
<b>Redemption</b>	The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2030 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Redemption").
<b>Permanent School Fund Guarantee</b>	The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (defined herein), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM.")
<b>Ratings</b>	The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") and "AAA" by Fitch Ratings, Inc. ("Fitch") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the TEA. The District's unenhanced, underlying ratings, including the Bonds, are "Aa3" by Moody's and "AA-" by Fitch. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" and "RATINGS" herein.)
<b>Tax Matters</b>	In the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, interest on the Bonds is excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under existing law subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. (See "TAX MATTERS" and Appendix C – "Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.")
<b>Payment Record</b>	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
<b>Legal Opinion</b>	Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of an opinion as to legality by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See Appendix C – "Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").
<b>Delivery</b>	When issued, anticipated to be on or about November 19, 2019.

## INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement (the "Official Statement"), which includes the cover page, Schedule I and the Appendices attached hereto, has been prepared by the New Caney Independent School District (the "District"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas (the "State") located in Montgomery and Harris Counties, Texas, in connection with the offering by the District of its Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") identified on page ii hereof.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

There follows in this Official Statement descriptions of the Bonds and the order (the "Order") adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District (the "Board") on June 17, 2019 authorizing the issuance of the Bonds and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request by writing the New Caney Independent School District, 21580 Loop 494, New Caney, Texas 77357 and, during the offering period, from the Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024 by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as of its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of this Official Statement relating to the Bonds will be submitted by the Underwriters of the Bonds to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and will be available through its Electronic Municipal Market Access system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

## PLAN OF FINANCING

### Purpose

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be utilized to (i) refund certain of the District's currently outstanding indebtedness as disclosed in Schedule I hereto (the "Refunded Bonds") for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuance of the Bonds.

### Refunded Bonds

The Order provides that from a portion of the proceeds of the sale of the Bonds to the Underwriters, the District will deposit with BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, the escrow agent for the Refunded Bonds (the "Escrow Agent"), an amount, together with other lawfully available funds of the District, which will be sufficient to accomplish the discharge and final payment of the Refunded Bonds on February 15, 2020 (the "Redemption Date"). Such funds will be held by the Escrow Agent in an escrow account (the "Escrow Fund") in cash uninvested or will be invested in securities authorized by Section 1207.062 Texas Government Code and the bond order authorizing the Refunded Bonds (the "Defeasance Securities"). Public Finance Partners LLC (the "Verification Agent"), will issue its report (the "Report") verifying at the time of delivery of the Bonds to the Underwriters the mathematical accuracy of the schedules that demonstrate the Defeasance Securities will mature and pay interest in such amounts which, together with any uninvested funds in the Escrow Fund, will be sufficient to pay, when due, the principal of and interest on the Refunded Bonds on and to the Redemption Date. Such maturing principal of and interest on the Defeasance Securities will not be available to pay the Bonds (see "VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS").

By the deposit of cash and Defeasance Securities with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, the District will have effected the defeasance of the Refunded Bonds pursuant to the terms of Chapter 1207 and the bond order authorizing the issuance of the Refunded Bonds. It is the opinion of Bond Counsel that as a result of such deposit, and in reliance on the Report, the Refunded Bonds will be outstanding only for the purpose of receiving payments from the Defeasance Securities and cash held for such purpose by the Escrow Agent, and the Refunded Bonds will not be deemed as being outstanding obligations of the District, payable from the sources and secured in the manner provided in the order authorizing their issuance or for any other purpose.

Upon defeasance of the Refunded Bonds, the payment of the Refunded Bonds will no longer be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund of Texas.

## THE BONDS

### General Description

The Bonds are dated November 1, 2019 and will bear interest from such Dated Date. The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts set forth on page ii of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months, and is payable on February 15, 2020 and on each August 15 and February 15 thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption.

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds. The Bonds will be issued in the denominations of \$5,000 of principal or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable by check mailed on or before each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially, BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar's registration books on the Record Date (as defined herein) or by such other customary banking arrangement acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar and the registered owner to whom interest is to be paid, provided, however, that such person shall bear all risk and expense of such other arrangements. Principal of the Bonds will be payable only upon presentation of such Bonds at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar at stated maturity or prior redemption. So long as the Bonds are registered in the name of Cede & Co. or other nominee for The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), payments of principal of and interest on the Bonds will be made as described in "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds is a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions are authorized to close, and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

### Authority for Issuance

The Bonds are issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, including Chapters 1207 and 1371, as amended, Texas Government Code (together, the "Act"), and the Order. As permitted by the provisions of the Act, the Board, in the Order, delegated certain District officials and staff members (each, a "Designated Financial Officer") the authority to establish

final terms and effectuate the sale of the Bonds, which final terms shall be evidenced in an approval certificate (the "Approval Certificate") relating to the Bonds. The Approval Certificate was executed by a Designated Financial Officer on October 17, 2019, which completed the sale of the Bonds.

### **Redemption**

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2030, are subject to redemption, at the option of the District, in whole or in part, on August 15, 2029, or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed.

### **Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices**

Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER RECEIVED BY THE BONDHOLDER, AND, SUBJECT TO PROVISION FOR PAYMENT OF THE REDEMPTION PRICE HAVING BEEN MADE AND THE SATISFACTION OF ANY OTHER CONDITION SPECIFIED IN THE NOTICE, INTEREST ON THE REDEEMED BONDS SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE FROM AND AFTER SUCH REDEMPTION DATE NOTWITHSTANDING THAT A BOND HAS NOT BEEN PRESENTED FOR PAYMENT.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement redemption of such Bonds from the beneficial owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or beneficial owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

### **Security**

The Bonds are direct obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from an ad valorem tax annually levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, on all taxable property within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

### **Permanent School Fund Guarantee**

In connection with the sale of the Bonds, the District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education of the TEA for the guarantee of the Bonds under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (Chapter 45, Subchapter C, of the Texas Education Code, as amended). Subject to meeting certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the Bonds will be absolutely and unconditionally guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. In the event of a payment default by the District, registered owners will receive all payments due from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund.

In the event the District defeases any of the Bonds, the payment of such defeased Bonds will cease to be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

### **Legality**

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").

### **Payment Record**

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

### **Amendments**

The District may amend the Order without the consent of or notice to any registered owners in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the registered owners, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the District may, with the written consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds then outstanding, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Order; except that, without the consent of the registered owners of all of the Bonds then outstanding, no such amendment, addition, or rescission may (1) extend the time or times of payment of the principal of and interest on the Bonds, reduce the principal amount, thereof, the redemption price, or the rate of interest thereon, or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds, (2) give any preference to any Bond over any other Bond, or (3) reduce the aggregate principal amount of Bonds required to be held by Holders for consent to any such amendment, addition or rescission.

### **Defeasance**

The Order provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, on such Bonds, plus interest thereon to the due date thereof (whether such due date be by reason of maturity, redemption, or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money sufficient to make such payment or (2) Government Securities to mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to

insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds. The Order provides that "Government Securities" means (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date of the District's adoption of the Order were rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that, on the date of the District's adoption of the Order were rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, and (d) any other then authorized securities or obligations under applicable law that may be used to defease obligations such as the Bonds. The District has the right, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Government Securities for the Government Securities originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the District moneys in excess of the amount required for such defeasance.

There is no assurance that the current law will not be changed in a manner which would permit investments other than those described above to be made with amounts deposited to defease the Bonds. Because the Order does not contractually limit such investments, registered owners may be deemed to have consented to defeasance with such other investments, notwithstanding the fact that such investments may not be of the same investment quality as those currently permitted under State law. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities used as Government Securities or that for any other Government Security will be maintained at any particular rating category.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid and will cease to be outstanding obligations secured by the Order or treated as debt of the District for purposes of taxation or applying any limitation on the District's ability to issue debt or for any other purpose. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment or redemption of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, that the right to call the Bonds for redemption is not extinguished if the District: (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption; (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements; and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Furthermore, the Permanent School Fund Guarantee will terminate with respect to any Bonds defeased in the manner provided above.

**Sources and Uses of Funds**

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

<b>Sources</b>	
Par Amount of Bonds	\$ 16,875,000.00
Reoffering Premium	1,689,751.40
Accrued Interest on Bonds	29,877.50
<b>Total Sources of Funds</b>	<b>\$ 18,594,628.90</b>
<b>Uses</b>	
Deposit to Escrow Fund	\$ 18,316,939.71
Costs of Issuance	137,000.00
Underwriters' Discount	106,097.69
Deposit to Interest and Sinking Fund	34,591.50
<b>Total Uses of Funds</b>	<b>\$ 18,594,628.90</b>

**REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES**

If the District defaults in the payment, when due, of principal, interest, redemption price of the Bonds or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Order, and the State fails to honor the Permanent School Fund Guarantee as hereinafter discussed, the failure to perform which materially, adversely affects the rights of the owners, including but not limited to, their prospective ability to be repaid in accordance with the Order, any registered owner is entitled to seek a writ of mandamus from a court of proper jurisdiction requiring the District to make such payment or observe and perform such covenants, obligations, or conditions. The issuance of a writ of mandamus may be sought if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Order and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed, as well as to enforce the rights of payment under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of stated maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the owners upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition and accordingly all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court has ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006), that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. Chapter 1371, as amended, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1371"), which pertains to the issuance of public securities by issuers such as the District, permits the District to waive sovereign immunity in the proceedings authorizing the issuance of the Bonds. Notwithstanding its reliance upon the provisions of Chapter 1371 in connection with the issuance of the Bonds (see "THE BONDS – Authority for Issuance" herein), the District has not waived the defense of sovereign immunity with respect thereto. Because it is unclear whether the Texas Legislature has effectively waived the District's sovereign immunity from a suit for money damages outside of Chapter 1371, bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants in the absence of District action. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a



general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors and by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

### **BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM**

*This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Underwriters believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.*

*The District and the Underwriters cannot and do not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds or other notices, to Direct Participants, (2) Direct Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds) or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with Direct Participants are on file with DTC.*

DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited Securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the Book-Entry-Only System for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to The District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments with respect to the Bonds to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, physical Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor Bonds depository). In that event, physical Bond certificates will be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's Book-Entry-Only System has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Underwriters take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

#### **Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement**

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Direct or Indirect Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

### **REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE**

#### **Paying Agent/Registrar**

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar until the Bonds are duly paid.

#### **Successor Paying Agent/Registrar**

Provision is made in the Order for replacing the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the District replaces the Paying Agent/Registrar, such Paying Agent/Registrar shall, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, deliver the Paying Agent/Registrar's records to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar, and the successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States or any state or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District has agreed to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

#### **Initial Registration**

Definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to Cede & Co., the nominee of DTC pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein.

#### **Future Registration**

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the Bonds may be transferred, registered and assigned on the registration books only upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond or Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like aggregate principal amount as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

#### **Record Date For Interest Payment**

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person to whom the interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date means the close of business on the last business day of the next preceding month. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, that continues for 30 days or more thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from or on behalf of the District. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

#### **Limitation on Transfer of Bonds**

Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to (i) issue or transfer to an assignee of a holder any Bond during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next

following principal or interest payment date or (ii) make any such, transfer, conversion or exchange within 45 days prior to its redemption date; provided, however, such limitation of transfer shall not be applicable to an exchange by the registered owner of the uncalled balance of a Bond called for redemption in part.

### **Replacement Bonds**

If any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond in the same principal amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar a certificate to the effect that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

### **THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM**

*The information below concerning the State Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for school district bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, and is not construed as a representation by the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Underwriters.*

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

### **History and Purpose**

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is generally authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). (But see "2019 Texas Legislative Session" for a description of legislation that is expected to change the composition of the SLB). As of August 31, 2018, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 23% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2018 distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$247 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was \$1,235.8 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018, as filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2018 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2018 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2018, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2018 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2018 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/) and with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at [www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml](http://www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml). A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

### **2019 Texas Legislative Session**

During the 86th Regular Session of the Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 27, 2019 (the "86th Session"), various bills were enacted that relate to the PSF. Among such enacted legislation are bills that relate to the composition of the SLB and its relationship to the SBOE with respect to the management of the PSF. Legislation was approved that will change the composition of the SLB to a five member board from a three member board. Under that bill, the Land Commissioner will continue to head the SLB, but the remaining four members will be appointed by the Governor, and of those four members, two are required to be selected from a list of nominees to be submitted to the Governor by the SBOE. That legislation also requires an annual joint meeting of the SLB and the SBOE for the purpose of discussing the allocation of the assets of the PSF and the investment of money in the PSF. Other enacted legislation requires the SLB and the SBOE to provide quarterly financial reports to each other and creates a "permanent school fund liquid account" in the PSF for the purpose of receiving funds transferred from the SLB on a quarterly basis that are not then invested by the SLB or needed within the forthcoming quarter for investment by the SBOE. Such funds shall be invested in liquid assets in the same manner that the PSF is managed until such time as the funds are required for investment by the SLB. That legislation also requires the Texas Education Agency, in consultation with the GLO, to conduct a study regarding distributions to the ASF from the PSF. In addition, a joint resolution was approved that proposes a constitutional amendment to the Texas Constitution to increase the permissible amount of distributions to the ASF from revenue derived during a year from PSF land or other properties from \$300 million to \$600 million annually. That constitutional change is subject to approval at a State-wide referendum to be conducted on November 5, 2019.

Other legislation enacted during the 86th Session provides for the winding up of the affairs of an open-enrollment charter school that ceases operations, including as a result of the revocation or other termination of its charter. In particular, among other provisions, the legislation addresses the disposition of real and personal property of a discontinued charter school and provides under certain circumstances for reimbursement to be made to the State, if the disposed property was acquired with State funds; authorizes the Commissioner to adopt a rule to govern related party transactions by charter schools; and creates a "charter school liquidation fund" for the management of any reclaimed State funds, including, in addition to other potential uses, for the use of deposit of such reclaimed funds to the Charter District Reserve Fund.

No assessment has been made by the TEA or PSF staff as to the potential financial impact of any legislation enacted during the 86th Session, including the increase in the permissible amount that may be transferred from the PSF to the ASF, should State voters approve the proposed constitutional amendment described above on November 5, 2019.

### **The Total Return Constitutional Amendment**

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) ("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that

biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in 2018. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and increased the allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, which was reviewed and reaffirmed in June 2018, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, international equities at 14% and emerging international equities at 3%) and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2018, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 40.52% in public market equity investments; 13.25% in fixed income investments; 10.35% in absolute return assets; 9.16% in private equity assets; 7.47% in real estate assets; 6.78% in risk parity assets; 5.95% in real return assets; 6.21% in emerging market debt; and 0.31% in unallocated cash.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual pay-out from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, changes in international trade policies, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

## Management and Administration of the Fund

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the SLB. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

## Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified

regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017. Based upon the cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2018, the State Law Capacity increased from \$111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017 to \$118,511,255,268 on August 31, 2018 (but at such date the IRS Limit was lower, \$117,318,653,038, so it is the currently effective capacity limit for the Fund).

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/), which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general could be adversely affected by a number of factors, including changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, changes in State laws that implement funding decisions for school districts and charter districts, which could adversely affect the credit quality of those districts, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

### **The School District Bond Guarantee Program**

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain

accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

### **The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 27, 2019 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.85%. As of June 10, 2019, there were 181 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 764 charter school campuses operating under such charters (though as of such date, 15 of such campuses have not begun serving students for various reasons). Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.



From time to time, TEA has limited new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to capacity limits specified by the Act. Legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modified the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBG Capacity"), which further increased the amount of the CDBG Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBG Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBG Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

### **2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The CDBG Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBG Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBG Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of April 30, 2019, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 69.90% of the IRS Limit (which is currently the applicable capacity limit) for the Guarantee Program (based on unaudited data). SB 1480 amended the CDBG Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBG Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBG Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBG Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.85% in February 2019. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBG Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBG Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBG Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBG Capacity expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBG Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017 and June 2018, the SBOE authorized the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal years 2018 and 2019, respectively, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBG Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE determined not to implement a previously approved the multiplier increase to 3.75 times market value, opting to increase the multiplier to 3.50 times effective in late March 2018.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBG Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBG Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of April 30, 2019, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.87% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it will be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

## **Charter District Risk Factors**

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of \$60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At April 30, 2019, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$14,743,830.

## **Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF**

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The Governor designated the impacted area for disaster relief, and TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter schools in the designated area. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

Legislation was approved during the 86th Session that provides supplemental appropriations to the TEA in amounts of \$535,200,000 and \$636,000,000 for the fiscal biennia ending August 31, 2019 and August 31, 2021, respectively. Those appropriations are designated for use as an adjustment to school district property values and reimbursement for disaster remediation costs as a result of Hurricane Harvey. That legislation also included a reimbursement to the TEA in the amount of \$271,300,000 for costs previously incurred by the TEA for increased student costs, the reduction in school district property values and other disaster remediation costs stemming from Hurricane Harvey. For fiscal year 2018, TEA initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts). In June 2018 TEA received results of a survey of tax appraisal districts in the area affected by the hurricane with respect to the impact of the hurricane on the tax rolls of affected school districts. In aggregate, the tax rolls of affected districts appear to have increased slightly for fiscal 2018 over 2017, but the increases were at a lower rate than had been anticipated in the State's general appropriation act for the biennium. TEA notes that as of June 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Many of the school districts and two charter districts in the designated disaster area have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program" and "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as "intercept" programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

## **Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program**

Moody's Investors Service, Inc., S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings, Inc. rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "RATINGS" herein.

**Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds**

**Permanent School Fund Valuations**

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Book Value <sup>(1)</sup>	Market Value <sup>(1)</sup>
2014	\$27,596,692,541	\$38,445,519,225
2015	29,081,052,900	36,196,265,273
2016	30,128,037,903	37,279,799,335
2017	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573
2018 <sup>(2)</sup>	33,860,358,647	44,074,197,940

<sup>(1)</sup> SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

<sup>(2)</sup> At August 31, 2018, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.4 million, \$238.8 million, \$2,983.3 million, \$7.5 million, and \$4,247.3 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$2,022.8 million, \$661.1 million, \$3,126.7 million, \$4.2 million, and \$4,247.3 million, respectively. At April 30, 2019, the PSF had a book value of \$34,917,398,274 and a market value of \$44,978,512,134. April 30, 2019 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

**Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds**

At 8/31	Principal Amount <sup>(1)</sup>
2014	\$58,364,350,783
2015	63,955,449,047
2016	68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023
2018	79,080,901,069 <sup>(2)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> As of August 31, 2018 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$126,346,333,815, of which \$47,265,432,746 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2018, there were \$79,080,901,069 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, and using the IRS Limit at that date of \$117,318,653,038 (the IRS Limit is currently the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity), 97.35% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 2.65% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

**Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category<sup>(1)</sup>**

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	School District Bonds		Charter District Bonds		Totals	
	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount
2014 <sup>(2)</sup>	2,869	\$58,061,805,783	10	\$302,545,000	2,879	\$58,364,350,783
2015	3,089	63,197,514,047	28	757,935,000	3,117	63,955,449,047
2016	3,244	67,342,303,445	35	961,025,000	3,279	68,303,328,445
2017	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023
2018 <sup>(3)</sup>	3,249	77,647,966,069	44	1,432,935,000	3,293	79,080,901,069

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

<sup>(3)</sup> At April 30, 2019 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$82,005,532,177 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,269 school district issues, aggregating \$80,311,477,177 in principal amount and 46 charter district issues, aggregating \$1,694,055,000 in principal amount. At April 30, 2019, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$3,265,722,717 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment).

**Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018**

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2018, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2018, the Fund balance was \$44.0 billion, an increase of \$2.6 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long-term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2018, were 7.23%, 7.68% and 6.92%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, five-year, and ten-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 8.69%, 7.78%, and 4.23%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2018, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2018, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$4.2 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$5.2 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2018, totaled \$1.5 billion in real estate investments and \$2.1 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2018, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.6 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 19.83%, 23.95%, 3.51%, and -1.07%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of -0.78% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 6.66%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 12.01% and 15.94%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 3.43%, while real return assets yielded 0.70%. Emerging market debt produced a return of -11.40%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of 7.23% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, out-performing the benchmark index of 6.89% by approximately 34 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 8.69% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2018.

For fiscal year 2018, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$4.0 billion, a decrease of \$1.4 billion from fiscal year 2017 earnings of \$5.4 billion. This decrease reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2018. In fiscal year 2018, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, decreased 17.1% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2018. This decrease is primarily attributable to a decrease in PSF(SLB) quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2017 and 2018, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.1 billion and \$1.2 billion, respectively. There were no contributions to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal years 2017 and 2018.

At the end of the 2018 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$79.1 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 7,242 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$176.4 billion in principal amount. During the 2018 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program remained flat at 3,293. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$4.8 billion or 6.5%. The State Capacity Limit increased by \$6.9 billion, or 6.2%, during fiscal year 2018 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund used to calculate that Program capacity limit. The effective capacity of the Program increased by only \$5.7 billion, or 5.2%, during fiscal year 2018 as the IRS Limit was reached during the fiscal year, and it is the lower of the two State and federal capacity limits for the Program.

### **2011 Constitutional Amendment**

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed

6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3%, 3.5% and 3.7% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015, 2016-2017 and 2018-2019, respectively. In November 2018, the SBOE approved a \$2.2 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2020-2021, to be made in equal monthly increments of \$92.2 million, which represents a 2.981% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of \$220.97, based on 2018 preliminary student average daily attendance of 5,004,998. In making the 2020-2021 biennium distribution decision, the SBOE took into account a commitment of the SLB transfer \$10 million to the PSF in fiscal year 2020 and \$45 million in fiscal year 2021.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to \$300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

### **Other Events and Disclosures**

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in April 2018. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund.

In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2016 and 2017, respectively, and \$30.4 million for each of the fiscal years 2018 and 2019.

As of August 31, 2018, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

### **PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking**

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund\\_Disclosure\\_Statement\\_-\\_Bond\\_Guarantee\\_Program/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/). The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on February 1, 2019, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c2-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org), and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <http://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

### **Annual Reports**

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of

the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

#### **Event Notices**

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (15) the incurrence of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the Program, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, any of which reflect financial difficulties. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

#### **Availability of Information**

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

#### **Limitations and Amendments**

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate

principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

### **SEC Exemptive Relief**

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the “small issuer exemption” set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities

## **STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS**

### **Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System**

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the “Court”) has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the “Finance System”). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the “Legislature”) from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to “establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools,” or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court’s previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) (“*Morath*”). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that “[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements.” The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding “system” is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

### **Possible Effects of Changes in Law on District Bonds**

The Court’s decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Finance System was “undeniably imperfect”. While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality “would not, however, affect the district’s authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system’s unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions” (collectively, the “Contract Clauses”), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District’s financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District’s obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM”.

## **CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM**

*During the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature made numerous changes to the current public school finance system, the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes, and the calculation of defined tax rates, including particularly those contained in House Bill 3 (“HB 3”) and Senate Bill 2 (“SB 2”). In some instances, the provisions of HB 3 and SB 2 will require further interpretation in connection with their implementation in order to resolve ambiguities contained in the bills. The District is still in the process of (a) analyzing the provisions of HB 3 and SB 2, and (b) monitoring the on-going guidance provided by TEA. The information contained herein under the captions “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM” and “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS” is subject to change, and only reflects the District’s understanding of HB 3 and SB 2 based on information available to the District as of the date of this Official Statement. Prospective investors are encouraged to review HB 3, SB 2, and the Property Tax Code for definitive requirements for the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes, the calculation of the defined tax rates, and the administration of the current public school finance system.*

### **Overview**

The following language constitutes only a summary of the public school finance system as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 43 through 49 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each school district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a maintenance and operations ("M&O") tax to pay current expenses and an interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. School districts may not increase their M&O tax rate for the purpose of creating a surplus to pay debt service on bonds. Prior to 2006, school districts were authorized to levy their M&O tax at a voter-approved rate, generally up to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. Since 2006, the State Legislature has enacted various legislation that has compressed the voter-approved M&O tax rate, as described below. Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding bonded indebtedness through the levy of an I&S tax at a rate not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable value at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, school districts generally may levy an I&S tax sufficient to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – I&S Tax Rate Limitations" herein). Because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by school districts with the same I&S tax rate and M&O tax rate is also subject to wide variation; however, the public school finance funding formulas are designed to generally equalize local funding generated by a school district's M&O tax rate.

Prior to the 2019 Legislative Session, a school district's maximum M&O tax rate for a given tax year was determined by multiplying that school district's 2005 M&O tax rate levy by an amount equal a compression percentage set by legislative appropriation or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"). This compression percentage was historically set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value, since most school districts in the State had a voted maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value (though certain school districts located in Harris County had special M&O tax rate authorizations allowing a higher M&O tax rate). School districts were permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate or, with voter-approval at a valid election in the school district, up to \$0.17 above the compressed tax rate (for most school districts, this equated to an M&O tax rate between \$1.04 and \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value). School districts received additional State funds in proportion to such taxing effort.

### **Local Funding for School Districts**

During the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature made several significant changes to the funding methodology for school districts (the "2019 Legislation"). The 2019 Legislation orders a school district's M&O tax rate into two distinct parts: the "Tier One Tax Rate", which is the local M&O tax rate required for a school district to receive any part of the basic level of State funding (referred to herein as "Tier One") under the Foundation School Program, as further described below, and the "Enrichment Tax Rate", which is any local M&O tax effort in excess of its Tier One Tax Rate. The 2019 Legislation amended formulas for the State Compression Percentage and Maximum Compressed Tax Rate (each as described below) to compress M&O tax rates in response to year-over-year increases in property values across the State and within a school district, respectively. The discussion in this subcaption "Local Funding For School Districts" is generally intended to describe funding provisions applicable to all school districts; however, there are distinctions in the funding formulas for school districts that generate local M&O tax revenues in excess of the school districts' funding entitlements, as further discussed under the subcaption "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Revenue Level In Excess of Entitlement" herein.

#### ***State Compression Percentage***

The "State Compression Percentage" for the State fiscal year ending in 2020 (the 2019-2020 school year) is a statutorily-defined percentage of the rate of \$1.00 per \$100 at which a school district must levy its Tier One Tax Rate to receive the full amount of the Tier One funding to which a school district is entitled. For the State fiscal year ending in 2020, the State Compression Percentage is set at 93% per \$100 of taxable value. Beginning in the State fiscal year ending in 2021, the State Compression Percentage is the lesser of three alternative calculations: (1) 93% or a lower percentage set by appropriation for a school year; (2) a percentage determined by formula if the estimated total taxable property value of the State (as submitted annually to the State Legislature by the State Comptroller) has increased by at least 2.5% over the prior year; and (3) the prior year State Compression Percentage. For any year, the maximum State Compression Percentage is 93%.

#### ***Maximum Compressed Tax Rate***

Pursuant to the 2019 Legislation, beginning with the State fiscal year ending in 2021 (the 2020-2021 school year) the Maximum Compressed Tax Rate (the "MCR") is the tax rate per \$100 of valuation of taxable property at which a school district must levy its Tier One Tax Rate to receive the full amount of the Tier One funding to which the school district is entitled. The MCR is equal to the lesser of three alternative calculations: (1) the school district's prior year MCR; (2) a percentage determined by formula if the school district experienced a year-over-year increase in property value of at least 2.5%; or (3) the product of the State Compression Percentage for the current year multiplied by \$1.00. However, each year the TEA shall evaluate the MCR for each school district in the State, and for any given year, if a school district's MCR is calculated to be less than 90% of any other school district's MCR for the current year, then the school district's MCR is instead equal to the school district's prior year MCR, until TEA determines that the difference between the school district's MCR and any other school district's MCR is not more than 10%. These compression formulas are intended to more closely equalize local generation of Tier One funding among districts with disparate tax bases and generally reduce the Tier One Tax Rates of school districts as property values increase.

#### ***Tier One Tax Rate***

For the 2019-2020 school year, the Tier One Tax Rate is the State Compression Percentage multiplied by (i) \$1.00, or (ii) for a school district that levied an M&O tax rate for the 2018-2019 school year that was less than \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value, the total number of cents levied by the school district for the 2018-2019 school year for M&O purposes; effectively setting the Tier One Tax Rate for the State fiscal year ending in 2020 for most school districts at \$0.93. Beginning in the 2020-2021 school year, a school district's Tier One Tax Rate is defined as a school district's M&O tax rate levied that does not exceed the school district's MCR.

#### ***Enrichment Tax Rate***

The Enrichment Tax Rate is the number of cents a school district levies for M&O in excess of the Tier One Tax Rate, up to an additional \$0.17. The Enrichment Tax Rate is divided into two components: (i) "Golden Pennies" which are the first \$0.08 of tax effort in excess of a school district's Tier One Tax Rate; and (ii) "Copper Pennies" which are the next \$0.09 in excess of a school district's Tier One Tax Rate plus Golden Pennies.

School districts may levy an Enrichment Tax Rate at a level of their choice, subject to the limitations described under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate"; however to levy any of the Enrichment Tax Rate in a given year, a school district must levy a Tier One Tax Rate equal to \$0.93 for the 2019-2020 school year, or equal to the school district's MCR for the 2020-2021 and subsequent years. Additionally, a school district's levy of Copper Pennies is subject to compression if the



guaranteed yield (i.e., the guaranteed level of local tax revenue and State aid generated for each cent of tax effort) of Copper Pennies is increased from one year to the next (see “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts – Tier Two”).

### **State Funding for School Districts**

State funding for school districts is provided through the two-tiered Foundation School Program, which guarantees certain levels of funding for school districts in the State. School districts are entitled to a legislatively appropriated guaranteed yield on their Tier One Tax Rate and Enrichment Tax Rate. When a school district's Tier One Tax Rate and Enrichment Tax Rate generate tax revenues at a level below the respective entitlement, the State will provide “Tier One” funding or “Tier Two” funding, respectively, to fund the difference between the school district's entitlements and the calculated M&O revenues generated by the school district's respective M&O tax rates.

The first level of funding, Tier One, is the basic level of funding guaranteed to all school districts based on a school district's Tier One Tax Rate. Tier One funding may then be “enriched” with Tier Two funding. Tier Two provides a guaranteed entitlement for each cent of a school district's Enrichment Tax Rate, allowing a school district increase or decrease its Enrichment Tax Rate to supplement Tier One funding at a level of the school district's own choice. While Tier One funding may be used for the payment of debt service (except for school districts subject to the recapture provisions of Chapter 49 of the Texas Education Code, as discussed herein), and in some instances is required to be used for that purpose (see “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – I&S Tax Rate Limitations”), Tier Two funding may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

The current public school finance system also provides an Existing Debt Allotment (“EDA”) to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment (“IFA”) to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment (“NIFA”) to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, the State Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,323,444,300 for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the school district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities, provided that a school district qualifies for such funding and that the State Legislature makes sufficient appropriations to fund the allotments for a State fiscal biennium. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the State Legislature.

#### ***Tier One***

Tier One funding is the basic level of funding guaranteed to a school district, consisting of a State-appropriated baseline level of funding (the “Basic Allotment”) for each student in “Average Daily Attendance” (being generally calculated as the sum of student attendance for each State-mandated day of instruction divided by the number of State-mandated days of instruction, defined herein as “ADA”). The Basic Allotment is revised downward if a school district's Tier One Tax Rate is less than the State-determined threshold. The Basic Allotment is supplemented by additional State funds, allotted based upon the unique school district characteristics and demographics of students in ADA, to make up most of a school district's Tier One entitlement under the Foundation School Program.

For the 2019-2020 State fiscal year, the Basic Allotment for school districts with a Tier One Tax Rate equal to \$0.93, is \$6,160 for each student in ADA and is revised downward for school districts with a Tier One Tax Rate lower than \$0.93. For the State fiscal year ending in 2021 and subsequent State fiscal years, the Basic Allotment for a school district with a Tier One Tax Rate equal to the school district's MCR, is \$6,160 (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) for each student in ADA and is revised downward for a school district with a Tier One Tax Rate lower than the school district's MCR. The Basic Allotment is then supplemented for all school districts by various weights to account for differences among school districts and their student populations. Such additional allotments include, but are not limited to, increased funds for students in ADA who: (i) attend a qualified special education program, (ii) are diagnosed with dyslexia or a related disorder, (iii) are economically disadvantaged, or (iv) have limited English language proficiency. Additional allotments to mitigate differences among school districts include, but are not limited to: (i) a transportation allotment for mileage associated with transporting students who reside two miles or more from their home campus, (ii) a fast growth allotment (for school districts in the top 25% of enrollment growth relative to other school districts), and (iii) a college, career and military readiness allotment to further Texas' goal of increasing the number of students who attain a post-secondary education or workforce credential, and (iv) a teacher incentive allotment to increase teacher compensation retention in disadvantaged or rural school districts. A school district's total Tier One funding, divided by \$6,160, is a school district's measure of students in “Weighted Average Daily Attendance” (“WADA”), which serves to calculate Tier Two funding.

#### ***Tier Two***

Tier Two supplements Tier One funding and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., Golden Pennies and Copper Pennies) depending on the school district's Enrichment Tax Rate. Golden Pennies generate a guaranteed yield equal to the greater of (i) the local revenue per student in WADA per cent of tax effort available to a school district at the ninety-sixth (96th) percentile of wealth per student in WADA, or (ii) the Basic Allotment (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) multiplied by 0.016. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, school districts are guaranteed a yield of \$98.56 per student in WADA for each Golden Penny levied. Copper Pennies generate a guaranteed yield per student in WADA equal to the school district's Basic Allotment (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) multiplied by 0.008. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, school districts are guaranteed a yield of \$49.28 per student in WADA for each Copper Penny levied. For any school year in which the guaranteed yield of Copper Pennies per student in WADA exceeds the guaranteed yield of Copper Pennies per student in WADA for the preceding school year, a school district is required to reduce its Copper Pennies levied so as to generate no more revenue per student in WADA than was available to the school district for the preceding year. Accordingly, the increase in the guaranteed yield from \$31.95 per Copper Penny per student in WADA for the 2018-2019 school year to \$49.28 per Copper Penny per student in WADA for the 2019-2020 school year requires school districts to compress their levy of Copper Pennies by a factor of 0.64834. As such, school districts that levied an Enrichment Tax Rate of \$0.17 in school year 2018-2019 must reduce their Enrichment Tax Rate to approximately \$0.138 per \$100 taxable value for the 2019-2020 school year.

#### ***Existing Debt Allotment, Instruction Facilities Allotment, and New Instructional Facilities Allotment***

The Foundation School Program also includes facilities funding components consisting of the IFA and the EDA, subject to legislative appropriation each State fiscal biennium. To the extent funded for a biennium, these programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a school district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the “IFA Yield”) in State and local funds for each cent of I&S tax levied to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The IFA Yield has been \$35 since

this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where new IFA awards are available, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the TEA before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA State assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a school district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the school district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a school district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, the State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded.

State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") is the lesser of (i) \$40 per student in ADA or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which school districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The portion of a school district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first \$0.29 of its I&S tax rate (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the State Legislature). In general, a school district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the school district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the school district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A school district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the school district receives IFA funding.

Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the State Legislature for the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service payments during the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium on new bonds issued by school districts in the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

A school district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to school districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. In the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$100,000,000 for each fiscal year of the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium for NIFA allotments.

#### ***Tax Rate and Funding Equity***

The Commissioner may adjust a school district's funding entitlement if the funding formulas used to determine the school district's entitlement result in an unanticipated loss or gain for a school district. Any such adjustment requires preliminary approval from the Legislative Budget Board and the office of the Governor, and such adjustments may only be made through the 2020-2021 school year.

Additionally, the Commissioner may proportionally reduce the amount of funding a school district receives under the Foundation School Program and the ADA calculation if the school district operates on a calendar that provides less than the State-mandated minimum instruction time in a school year. The Commissioner may also adjust a school district's ADA as it relates to State funding where disaster, flood, extreme weather or other calamity has a significant effect on a school district's attendance.

Furthermore, "property-wealthy" school districts that received additional State funds under the public school finance system prior to the enactment of the 2019 Legislation are entitled to an equalized wealth transition grant on an annual basis through the 2023-2024 school year in an amount equal to the amount of additional revenue such school district would have received under former Texas Education Code Sections 41.002(e) through (g), as those sections existed on January 1, 2019. This grant is phased out through the 2023-2024 school year as follows: (1) 20% reduction for the 2020-2021 school year, (2) 40% reduction for the 2021-2022 school year, (3) 60% reduction for the 2022-2023 school year, and (4) 80% reduction for the 2023-2024 school year.

#### **Local Revenue Level in Excess of Entitlement**

A school district that has sufficient property wealth per student in ADA to generate local revenues on the school district's Tier One Tax Rate and Copper Pennies in excess of the school district's respective funding entitlements (a "Chapter 49 school district"), is subject to the local revenue reduction provisions contained in Chapter 49 of Texas Education Code, as amended ("Chapter 49"). Additionally, in years in which the amount of State funds appropriated specifically excludes the amount necessary to provide the guaranteed yield for Golden Pennies, local revenues generated on a school district's Golden Pennies in excess of the school district's respective funding entitlement are subject to the local revenue reduction provisions of Chapter 49. To reduce local revenue, Chapter 49 school districts are generally subject to a process known as "recapture", which requires a Chapter 49 school district to exercise certain options to remit local M&O tax revenues collected in excess of the Chapter 49 school district's funding entitlements to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or otherwise expending the respective M&O tax revenues for the benefit of students in school districts that are not Chapter 49 school districts, as described in the subcaption "Options for Local Revenue Levels in Excess of Entitlement". Chapter 49 school districts receive their allocable share of funds distributed from the constitutionally-prescribed Available School Fund, but are generally not eligible to receive State aid under the Foundation School Program, although they may continue to receive State funds for certain competitive grants and certain programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program.

Whereas prior to the 2019 Legislation, the recapture process had been based on the proportion of a school district's assessed property value per student in ADA, recapture is now measured by the "local revenue level" (being the M&O tax revenues generated in a school district) in excess of the entitlements appropriated by the State Legislature each fiscal biennium. Therefore, school districts are now guaranteed that recapture will not reduce revenue below their statutory entitlement. The changes to the wealth transfer provisions are expected to reduce the cumulative amount of recapture payments paid by school districts by approximately \$3.6 billion during the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium.

#### ***Options for Local Revenue Levels in Excess of Entitlement***

Under Chapter 49, a school district has six options to reduce local revenues to a level that does not exceed the school district's respective entitlements: (1) a school district may consolidate by agreement with one or more school districts to form a consolidated school district; all property and debt of the consolidating school districts vest in the consolidated school district; (2) a school district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor school district; (3) a school district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a school district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor school

district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor school districts; (5) a school district may execute an agreement to provide students of one or more other school districts with career and technology education through a program designated as an area program for career and technology education; or (6) a school district may consolidate by agreement with one or more school districts to form a consolidated taxing school district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 49 school district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (6) require prior approval by the Chapter 49 school district's voters.

Furthermore, a school district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective local revenue level is at or below the level that would produce its guaranteed entitlement under the Foundation School Program. If a school district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the school district's local revenue level to the level that would produce the school district's guaranteed entitlement, by detaching certain types of property from the school district and annexing the property to a property-poor school district or, if necessary, consolidate the school district with a property-poor school district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring school district's existing debt.

### **Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition**

For the 2019-2020 school year, the District was not designated as an "excess local revenue" district by TEA. Accordingly, the District has not been required to exercise one of the wealth equalization options permitted under applicable State law. As a district with wealth per student less than the equalized wealth value, the District may benefit in the future by agreeing to accept taxable property or funding assistance from or agreeing to consolidate with a property-rich district to enable such district to reduce its wealth per student to the permitted level.

A district's wealth per student must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the equalized wealth value, the District must reduce its wealth per student by the exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should exceed the maximum permitted value in future school years, it will be required to exercise one or more of the permitted wealth equalization options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of an annexing district.

For a detailed discussion of State funding for school district see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts."

## **AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES**

*The following is a summary of certain provisions of State law as it relates to ad valorem taxation and is not intended to be complete. Reference is made to Title I of the Texas Tax Code, as amended (the "Property Tax Code"), for identification of property subject to ad valorem taxation, property exempt or which may be exempted from ad valorem taxation if claimed, the appraisal of property for ad valorem tax purposes, and the procedures and limitations applicable to the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes.*

### **Valuation of Taxable Property**

The Property Tax Code provides for countywide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board (the "Appraisal Review Board") responsible for appraising property for all taxing units within the county. The appraisal of property within the District is the responsibility of the Montgomery Central Appraisal District and the Harris County Appraisal District (the "Appraisal District"). Except as generally described below, the Appraisal District is required to appraise all property within the Appraisal District on the basis of 100% of its market value and is prohibited from applying any assessment ratios. In determining market value of property, the Appraisal District is required to consider the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and use the method the chief appraiser of the Appraisal District considers most appropriate. The Property Tax Code requires appraisal districts to reappraise all property in its jurisdiction at least once every three (3) years. A taxing unit may require annual review at its own expense, and is entitled to challenge the determination of appraised value of property within the taxing unit by petition filed with the Appraisal Review Board.

State law requires the appraised value of an owner's principal residence ("homestead" or "homesteads") to be based solely on the property's value as a homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a homestead to the lesser of (1) the market value of the property or (2) 110% of the appraised value of the property for the preceding tax year plus the market value of all new improvements to the property.

State law provides that eligible owners of both agricultural land and open-space land, including open-space land devoted to farm or ranch purposes or open-space land devoted to timber production, may elect to have such property appraised for property taxation on the basis of its productive capacity. The same land may not be qualified as both agricultural and open-space land.

The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District are subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board. The appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by taxing units, such as the District, in establishing their tax rolls and tax rates (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – District and Taxpayer Remedies").

### **State Mandated Homestead Exemptions**

State law grants, with respect to each school district in the State, (1) a \$25,000 exemption of the appraised value of all homesteads, (2) a \$10,000 exemption of the appraised value of the homesteads of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older and the disabled, and (3) various exemptions for disabled veterans and their families, surviving spouses of members of the armed services killed in action and surviving spouses of first responders killed or fatally wounded in the line of duty. See "Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation" for the reduction in taxable valuation attributable to state-mandated homestead exemptions.

### **Local Option Homestead Exemptions**

The governing body of a taxing unit, including a city, county, school district, or special district, at its option may grant: (1) an exemption of up to 20% of the appraised value of all homesteads (but not less than \$5,000) and (2) an additional exemption of at least \$3,000 of the appraised value of the homesteads of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older and the disabled. Each taxing unit decides if it will offer the local option homestead exemptions and at what percentage or dollar amount, as applicable. The governing body of a school district may not repeal or reduce the amount of the local option homestead exemption described in (1), above, that was in place for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) for a period ending December 31, 2019. The exemption described in (2), above, may also be created, increased, decreased or repealed at an election called by the governing body of a taxing unit

upon presentment of a petition for such creation, increase, decrease, or repeal of at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the taxing unit. See "Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation" for the reduction in taxable valuation, if any, attributable to local option homestead exemptions.

### **State Mandated Freeze on School District Taxes**

Except for increases attributable to certain improvements, a school district is prohibited from increasing the total ad valorem tax on the homestead of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such homestead qualified for such exemption. This freeze is transferable to a different homestead if a qualifying taxpayer moves and, under certain circumstances, is also transferable to the surviving spouse of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older, but not the disabled. See "Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation" for the reduction in taxable valuation attributable to the freeze on taxes for the elderly and disabled.

### **Personal Property**

Tangible personal property (furniture, machinery, supplies, inventories, etc.) used in the "production of income" is taxed based on the property's market value. Taxable personal property includes income-producing equipment and inventory. Intangibles such as goodwill, accounts receivable, and proprietary processes are not taxable. Tangible personal property not held or used for production of income, such as household goods, automobiles or light trucks, and boats, is exempt from ad valorem taxation unless the governing body of a taxing unit elects to tax such property.

### **Freeport Exemptions**

Certain goods that are acquired in or imported into the State to be forwarded outside the State, and are detained in the State for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication ("Freeport Property") are exempt from ad valorem taxation unless a taxing unit took official action to tax Freeport Property before April 1, 1990 and has not subsequently taken official action to exempt Freeport Property. Decisions to continue taxing Freeport Property may be reversed in the future; decisions to exempt Freeport Property are not subject to reversal.

Certain goods, that are acquired in or imported into the State to be forwarded to another location within or without the State, stored in a location that is not owned by the owner of the goods and are transported to another location within or without the State within 175 days ("Goods-in-Transit"), are generally exempt from ad valorem taxation; however, the Property Tax Code permits a taxing unit, on a local option basis, to tax Goods-in-Transit if the taxing unit takes official action, after conducting a public hearing, before January 1 of the first tax year in which the taxing unit proposes to tax Goods-in-Transit. Goods-in-Transit and Freeport Property do not include oil, natural gas or petroleum products, and Goods-in-Transit does not include aircraft or special inventories such as manufactured housing inventory, or a dealer's motor vehicle, boat, or heavy equipment inventory.

A taxpayer may receive only one of the Goods-in-Transit or Freeport Property exemptions for items of personal property. See "Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation" for the reduction in taxable valuation, if any, attributable to Goods-in-Transit or Freeport Property exemptions.

### **Other Exempt Property**

Other major categories of exempt property include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if used for public purposes, property exempt by federal law, property used for pollution control, farm products owned by producers, property of nonprofit corporations used for scientific research or educational activities benefitting a college or university, designated historic sites, solar and wind-powered energy devices, and certain classes of intangible personal property.

### **Tax Increment Reinvestment Zones**

A city or county, by petition of the landowners or by action of its governing body, may create one or more tax increment reinvestment zones ("TIRZ") within its boundaries. At the time of the creation of the TIRZ, a "base value" for the real property in the TIRZ is established and the difference between any increase in the assessed valuation of taxable real property in the TIRZ in excess of the base value is known as the "tax increment". During the existence of the TIRZ, all or a portion of the taxes levied against the tax increment by a city or county, and all other overlapping taxing units that elected to participate, are restricted to paying only planned project and financing costs within the TIRZ and are not available for the payment of other obligations of such taxing units.

Until September 1, 1999, school districts were able to reduce the value of taxable property reported to the State to reflect any taxable value lost due to TIRZ participation by the school district. The ability of the school district to deduct the taxable value of the tax increment that it contributed prevented the school district from being negatively affected in terms of state school funding. However, due to a change in law, local M&O tax rate revenue contributed to a TIRZ created on or after May 31, 1999 will count toward a school district's Tier One entitlement (reducing Tier One State funds for eligible school districts) and will not be considered in calculating any school district's Tier Two entitlement (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts").

### **Tax Limitation Agreements**

The Texas Economic Development Act (Chapter 313, Texas Tax Code, as amended), allows school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the school district. Generally, during the last eight (8) years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, a school district may only levy and collect M&O taxes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. For the purposes of calculating its Tier One and Tier Two entitlements, the portion of a school district's property that is not fully taxable is excluded from the school district's taxable property values. Therefore, a school district will not be subject to a reduction in Tier One or Tier Two State funds as a result of lost M&O tax revenues due to entering into a tax limitation agreement (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts").

For a discussion of how the various exemptions described above are applied by the District, see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – The Property Tax Code as Applied to the District" herein.

### **District and Taxpayer Remedies**

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal the determinations of the Appraisal District by timely initiating a protest with the Appraisal Review Board. Additionally, taxing units such as the District may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Property Tax Code.

Beginning in the 2020 tax year, owners of certain property with a taxable value in excess of the current year “minimum eligibility amount”, as determined by the State Comptroller, and situated in a county with a population of one million or more, may protest the determinations of an appraisal district directly to a three-member special panel of the appraisal review board, appointed by the chairman of the appraisal review board, consisting of highly qualified professionals in the field of property tax appraisal. The minimum eligibility amount is set at \$50 million for the 2020 tax year, and is adjusted annually by the State Comptroller to reflect the inflation rate.

The Property Tax Code sets forth notice and hearing procedures for certain tax rate increases by the District and provides for taxpayer referenda that could result in the repeal of certain tax increases (see “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate”). The Property Tax Code also establishes a procedure for providing notice to property owners of reappraisals reflecting increased property value, appraisals which are higher than renditions, and appraisals of property not previously on an appraisal roll.

### **Levy and Collection of Taxes**

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty of six percent (6%) of the amount of the tax for the first calendar month it is delinquent, plus one percent (1%) for each additional month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid prior to July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent. If the tax is not paid by July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent, the tax incurs a total penalty of twelve percent (12%) regardless of the number of months the tax has been delinquent and incurs an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) if imposed by the District. The delinquent tax also accrues interest at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month it remains unpaid. The Property Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes for certain taxpayers. Furthermore, the District may provide, on a local option basis, for the split payment, partial payment, and discounts for early payment of taxes under certain circumstances.

### **District’s Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies**

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all state and local taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The lien exists in favor of each taxing unit, including the District, having power to tax the property. The District’s tax lien is on a parity with tax liens of such other taxing units. A tax lien on real property takes priority over the claim of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien; however, whether a lien of the United States is on a parity with or takes priority over a tax lien of the District is determined by applicable federal law. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

At any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property.

Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, adverse market conditions, taxpayer redemption rights, or bankruptcy proceedings which restrain the collection of a taxpayer’s debt.

Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from attaching to property and obtaining secured creditor status unless, in either case, an order lifting the stay is obtained from the bankruptcy court. In many cases, post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

## **TAX RATE LIMITATIONS**

### **M&O Tax Rate Limitations**

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operation (“M&O”) taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters under Section 45.003(d) of the Texas Education Code, as amended. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the next succeeding paragraph. The maximum voted M&O tax rate for the District is \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on March 9, 1974 under Chapter 20, Texas Education Code (now codified as Section 45.003, Texas Education Code).

The 2019 Legislation established the following maximum M&O tax rate per \$100 of taxable value that may be adopted by independent school districts, such as the District, for the 2019 and subsequent tax years:

For the 2019 tax year, the maximum M&O tax rate per \$100 of taxable value that may be adopted by a school district is the sum of \$0.17 and the product of the State Compression Percentage multiplied by \$1.00. For the 2019 tax year, the state compression percentage has been set at 93%.

For the 2020 and subsequent tax years, the maximum maintenance tax rate per \$100 of taxable value that may be adopted by an independent school district is the sum of \$0.17 and the school district’s MCR. The District’s MCR is, generally, inversely proportional to the change in taxable property values both within the District and the State, and is subject to recalculation annually. For any year, highest possible MCR for an independent school district is \$0.93.

Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the school district’s Voter-Approval Tax Rate without submitting such tax rate to an election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate. See “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate” herein.

### **I&S Tax Rate Limitations**

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see “THE BONDS – Security”).

Section 45.0031 of the Texas Education Code, as amended, requires a school district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all

previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by voters of a school district at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued (the "50-cent Test"). In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a school district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the school district, which effectively reduces the school district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the school district. If a school district exercises this option, it may not adopt an I&S tax until it has credited to the school district's I&S fund an amount equal to all State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service and any Tier One funds needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Additionally, a school district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the 50-cent Test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the school district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five (5) years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a school district uses projected future taxable values to meet the 50-cent Test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the school district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the 50-cent Test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a school district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, are not subject to the 50-cent Test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds (other than bonds issued to refund exempt bonds) are included in maximum annual debt service for calculation of the 50-cent Test when applied to subsequent bond issues that are subject to the 50-cent Test. The Bonds are issued as refunding bonds pursuant to Chapter 1207 and are, therefore, not subject to the 50-cent Test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on the Bonds are included in the calculation of the 50-cent Test as applied to subsequent issues of "new debt". The District has not used State assistance other than EDA or IFA allotment funding or projected property values to satisfy this threshold test.

### **Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate**

A school district's total tax rate is the combination of the M&O tax rate and the I&S tax rate. Generally, the highest rate at which a school district may levy taxes for any given year without holding an election to approve the tax rate is the "Voter-Approval Tax Rate", as described below.

For the 2019 tax year, a school district is required to adopt its annual tax rate before the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit being the lower of the "effective tax rate" calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year. "Effective tax rate" means the rate that will produce the prior year's total tax levy from the current year's total taxable values, adjusted such that lost values are not included in the calculation of the prior year's taxable values and new values are not included in the current year's taxable values.

For the 2019 tax year, the Voter-Approval Tax Rate for a school district is the sum of (i) the State Compression Percentage, multiplied by \$1.00; (ii) the greater of (a) the school district's M&O tax rate for the 2018 tax year, less the sum of (1) \$1.00, and (2) any amount by which the school district is required to reduce its Enrichment Tax Rate for the 2019 tax year, or (b) \$0.04; and (iii) the school district's I&S tax rate. For the 2019 tax year, a school district's M&O tax rate may not exceed the rate equal to the sum of (i) \$0.17 and (ii) the product of the State Compression Percentage multiplied by \$1.00.

For the 2019 tax year, a school district with a Voter-Approval Tax Rate equal to or greater than \$0.97 (excluding the school district's current I&S tax rate) may not adopt tax rate for the 2019 tax year that exceeds the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate. For the 2019 tax year, the District is not eligible to adopt a tax rate that exceeds its Voter-Approval Tax Rate.

Beginning with the 2020 tax year, a school district is required to adopt its annual tax rate before the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, except that a tax rate that exceeds the Voter-Approval Tax Rate must be adopted not later than the seventy-first (71st) day before the next occurring November uniform election date. A school district's failure to adopt a tax rate equal to or less than the Voter-Approval Tax Rate by September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after receipt of the certified appraisal roll, will result in the tax rate for such school district for the tax year to be the lower of the "no-new-revenue tax rate" calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the school district for the preceding tax year. A school district's failure to adopt a tax rate in excess of the Voter-Approval Tax Rate on or prior to the seventy-first (71st) day before the next occurring November uniform election date, will result in the school district adopting a tax rate equal to or less than its Voter-Approval Tax Rate by the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after receipt of the certified appraisal roll. "No-new-revenue tax rate" means the rate that will produce the prior year's total tax levy from the current year's total taxable values, adjusted such that lost values are not included in the calculation of the prior year's taxable values and new values are not included in the current year's taxable values.

For the 2020 and subsequent tax years, the Voter-Approval Tax Rate for a school district is the sum of (i) the school district's MCR; (ii) the greater of (a) the school district's Enrichment Tax Rate for the preceding year, less any amount by which the school district is required to reduce its current year Enrichment Tax Rate pursuant to Section 48.202(f), Education Code, as amended, or (b) the rate of \$0.05 per \$100 of taxable value; and (iii) the school district's current I&S tax rate. However, for only the 2020 tax year, if the governing body of the school district does not adopt by unanimous vote an M&O tax rate at least equal to the sum of the school district's MCR plus \$0.05, then \$0.04 is substituted for \$0.05 in the calculation for such school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate for the 2020 tax year. For the 2020 tax year, and subsequent years, a school district's M&O tax rate may not exceed the rate equal to the sum of (i) \$0.17 and (ii) the school district's MCR (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" herein, for more information regarding the State Compression Percentage, MCR, and the Enrichment Tax Rate).

Beginning with the 2020 tax year, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate without approval by a majority of the voters approving the higher rate at an election to be held on the next uniform election date. Further, subject to certain exceptions for areas declared disaster areas, State law requires the board of trustees of a school district to conduct an efficiency audit before seeking voter approval to adopt a tax rate exceeding the Voter-Approval Tax Rate and sets certain parameters for conducting and disclosing the results of such efficiency audit. An election is not required for a tax increase to address increased expenditures resulting from certain natural disasters in the year following the year in which such disaster occurs; however, the amount by which the increased tax rate exceeds the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate for such year may not be considered by the school district in the calculation of its subsequent Voter-Approval Tax Rate.

**The calculation of the Voter-Approval Tax Rate does not limit or impact the District's ability to set an I&S tax rate in each year sufficient to pay debt service on all of the District's tax-supported debt obligations, including the Bonds.**

Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss the school district's budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the school district if the school district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c), (c-1), (c-2), and (d), and, if applicable, subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the school district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A school district that elects to adopt a tax rate before the adoption of a budget for the fiscal year that begins in the current tax year may adopt a tax rate for the current tax year before receipt of the certified appraisal roll, so long as the chief appraiser of the appraisal district in which the school district participates has certified to the assessor for the school district an estimate of the taxable value of property in the school district. If a school district adopts its tax rate prior to the adoption of its budget, both the no-new-revenue tax rate and the Voter-Approval Tax Rate of the school district shall be calculated based on the school district's certified estimate of taxable value. A school district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

Beginning with the 2020 tax year, a school district must annually calculate and prominently post on its internet website, and submit to the county tax assessor-collector for each county in which all or part of the school district is located its Voter-Approval Tax Rate in accordance with forms prescribed by the State Comptroller.

### **THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT**

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in the respective County. Each Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within the respective County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District collects an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District's taxes are collected by the Montgomery County Tax Assessor.

The District does not allow split payments of taxes on homesteads and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone. The District does not grant tax abatements.

Other than the State-mandated exemptions of \$25,000 for general homestead and an additional \$10,000 for persons who are 65 years of age or older and who are disabled, the District does not grant a local option exemption to the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or the disabled.

The District does not grant any portion of the additional local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

### **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS**

The District's employees participate in a retirement plan (the "Plan") with the State. The Plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas ("TRS"). State contributions are made to cover costs of the Plan up to certain statutory limits. The District is obligated for a portion of the Plan costs relating to employee salaries that exceed the statutory limit. Aside from the District's contribution to TRS, the District has no pension fund expenditures or liabilities. For fiscal year ended August 31, 2016, the District made a contribution to TRS on a portion of their employee's salaries that exceeded the statutory minimum. The District does not offer any post-employment retirement benefits and has no liabilities for "Other Post Employment Retirement Benefits" as defined in GASB Statement No. 45. For a discussion of the TRS retirement plan, see "IV. OTHER INFORMATION – C. Defined Benefit Pension Plan" to the audited financial statements of the District that are attached hereto as Appendix D (the "Financial Statements").

During the year ended August 31, 2018, employees of the District were covered by a fully-insured health insurance plan (the "Health Care Plan"). The District contributed \$250 per month, per employee to the Health Care Plan. Employees, at their option, authorize payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents. See "IV. OTHER INFORMATION – A. Risk Management - Health Care Coverage" of the Financial Statements.

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program ("TRS-Care"), a cost-sharing, multiple-employer defined benefit postemployment health care plan administered by the TRS. Contribution requirements to TRS-Care are legally established each biennium by the State legislature. See "IV. OTHER INFORMATION – D. Defined Other Postemployment Benefit Plan" in the Financial Statements.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

In June 2012, Government Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Statement No. 68 (Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions) was issued to improve accounting and financial reporting by state and local governments regarding pensions. GASB Statement No. 68 requires reporting entities, such as the District, to recognize their proportionate share of the net pension liability and operating statement activity related to changes in collective pension liability. This means that reporting entities, such as the District, that contribute to the TRS pension plan will report a liability on the face of their government-wide financial statements. Such reporting began with the District's fiscal year ending August 31, 2015. See "APPENDIX A – Change in Net Assets". GASB Statement No. 68 applies only to pension benefits and does not apply to Other Post-Employment Benefits (OPEB) or TRS-Care related liabilities.

See "IV. OTHER INFORMATION – G. Prior Period Adjustment" in the audited financial statement of the District for the year ended August 31, 2018 as set forth in APPENDIX D hereto for information related to the District's adoption of GASB Statement No. 75, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions and the related prior period adjustment.

## RATINGS

The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") and "AAA" by Fitch Ratings, Inc. ("Fitch") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the TEA. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM"). The District's unenhanced, underlying ratings, including the Bonds, are "Aa3" by Moody's and "AA-" by Fitch.

An explanation of the significance of such ratings may be obtained from Moody's and Fitch. The ratings on the Bonds by Moody's and Fitch reflects only the view of said company at the time the ratings are given, and the District makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the ratings. There is no assurance that the ratings will continue for any given period of time, or that the ratings will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by Moody's and Fitch, if, in the judgment of Moody's and Fitch, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of the ratings may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

The above ratings are not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold the Bonds, and such ratings may be subject to revision or withdrawal at any time by the rating agencies. Any downward revision or withdrawal of the ratings may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

## LEGAL MATTERS

The District will furnish to the Underwriters a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of Texas to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and the approving legal opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Bond Counsel to the District ("Bond Counsel"), to the effect that the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under section 103(a) of the Internal Revenue Code, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion is attached hereto as Appendix C. The legal fee to be paid to Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds.

Though it represents the Financial Advisor and the Underwriters from time to time in matters unrelated to the issuance of the Bonds, Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the District in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. Except as noted below, Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part in the preparation of this Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein except that in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information appearing under the captions or subcaptions "PLAN OF FINANCING – Refunded Bonds", "THE BONDS" (except for the information included in the second paragraph under the subcaption "Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices" and under the subcaptions "Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "Payment Record," as to which no opinion is expressed), and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" (except for the information under the sub-caption "Compliance With Prior Undertakings," as to which no opinion is expressed), and Bond Counsel is of the opinion that the statements and information contained therein fairly and accurately reflect the provisions of the Order; further, Bond Counsel has reviewed the statements and information contained in this Official Statement under the captions and sub-captions "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" (except information appearing under the subcaption "Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition", as to which no opinion is expressed), "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM", "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" (first paragraph only), "LEGAL MATTERS" (except for the last sentence of the second paragraph thereof), "TAX MATTERS," "LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS," and "REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE," and Bond Counsel is of the opinion that the statements and information contained therein are correct as to matters of law. Certain legal matters will be passed upon by the Underwriters by their counsel, Hunton Andrews Kurth LLP, Houston, Texas, whose compensation is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

## TAX MATTERS

### Tax Exemption

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the opinion of Bond Counsel to the effect that interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes (1) is excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the "Code"), of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Code and existing regulations, published rulings, and court decisions, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. The statutes, regulations, rulings, and court decisions on which such opinion is based are subject to change. A form of Bond Counsel's legal opinion appears in Appendix C hereto.

In rendering the foregoing opinions, Bond Counsel will rely upon the Report of the Verification Agent and upon representations and certifications of the District made in certificates pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and will assume continuing compliance by the District with the provisions of the Order subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds. The Order contains covenants by the District with respect to, among other matters, the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the facilities financed therewith by persons other than state or local governmental units, the manner in which the proceeds of the Bonds are to be invested, the periodic calculation and payment to the United States Treasury of arbitrage "profits" from the investment of the proceeds, and the reporting of certain information to the United States Treasury. Failure to comply with any of these covenants may cause interest on the Bonds to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof from the date of the issuance of the Bonds.

Except as described above, Bond Counsel will express no other opinion with respect to any other federal, state or local tax consequences under present law, or proposed legislation, resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition



or disposition of, the Bonds. Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result, but represents its legal judgment based upon its review of existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions and the representations and covenants of the District described above. No ruling has been sought from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") with respect to the matters addressed in the opinion of Bond Counsel, and Bond Counsel's opinion is not binding on the IRS. The IRS has an ongoing program of auditing the tax-exempt status of the interest on municipal obligations. If an audit of the Bonds is commenced, under current procedures the IRS is likely to treat the District as the "taxpayer," and the owners of the Bonds would have no right to participate in the audit process. In responding to or defending an audit of the tax-exempt status of the interest on the Bonds, the District may have different or conflicting interests from the owners of the Bonds. Public awareness of any audit of the Bonds could adversely affect the value and liquidity of the Bonds during the pendency of the audit, regardless of its ultimate outcome.

### **Tax Changes**

Existing law may change to reduce or eliminate the benefit to bondholders of the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Any proposed legislation or administrative action, whether or not taken, could also affect the value and marketability of the Bonds. It is uncertain whether this legislation will be enacted and, if so, whether it will be enacted in its current form. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to any proposed or future changes in tax law.

### **Ancillary Tax Consequences**

Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should be aware that the ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust (FASIT), individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Prospective purchasers should consult their own tax advisors as to the applicability of these consequences to their particular circumstances.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Bonds**

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain Bonds may be less than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity (the "Discount Bonds"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Discount Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes original issue discount to the initial purchaser of such Discount Bonds. A portion of such original issue discount, allocable to the holding period of a Discount Bond by the initial purchaser, will be treated as interest for federal income tax purposes, excludable from gross income on the same terms and conditions as those for other interest on the Bonds. Such interest is considered to be accrued actuarially in accordance with the constant interest method over the life of a Discount Bond, taking into account the semiannual compounding of accrued interest, at the yield to maturity on such Discount Bond and generally will be allocated to an initial purchaser in a different amount from the amount of the payment denominated as interest actually received by the initial purchaser during his taxable year.

However, such accrued interest may be required to be taken into account in determining the amount of the branch profits tax applicable to certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment. In addition, the accrual of such interest may result in certain other collateral federal income tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a FASIT, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

In the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of a Discount Bond prior to maturity, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Discount Bond was held) is includable in gross income.

Owners of Discount Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal income tax purposes of accrued interest upon disposition of Discount Bonds and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Discount Bonds. It is possible that, under applicable provisions governing determination of state and local income taxes, accrued interest on the Discount Bonds may be deemed to be received in the year of accrual even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Bonds**

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain Bonds may be greater than the stated redemption price amount payable on such Bonds at maturity (the "Premium Bonds"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Premium Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Premium Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and its stated redemption price at maturity constitutes premium to the initial purchaser of such Premium Bonds. The basis for federal income tax purposes of a Premium Bond in the hands of such initial purchaser must be reduced each year by the amortizable bond premium, although no federal income tax deduction is allowed as a result of such reduction in basis for amortizable bond premium with respect to the Premium Bonds. Such reduction in basis will increase the amount of any gain (or decrease the amount of any loss) to be recognized for federal income tax purposes upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a Premium Bond. The amount of premium which is amortizable each year by an initial purchaser is determined by using such purchaser's yield to maturity.

Purchasers of the Premium Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of amortizable bond premium on Premium Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Premium Bonds.

## **INVESTMENT POLICIES**

### **Investments**

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board of the District. Both State law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

## Legal Investments

Under State law, the District is authorized to invest in (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities, (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States, (4) other obligations, the principal of and interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent, (6) certificates of deposit and share certificates (i) that are issued by or through an institution that has its main office or a branch office in Texas and are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) and clause (14) or in any other manner and amount provided by law for District deposits; or (ii) where: (a) the funds are invested by the District through a depository institution that has a main office or branch office in the State and that is selected by the District; (b) the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of funds in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District; (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; (d) the depository institution acts as a custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit; and (e) at the same time that the certificates of deposit are issued, the depository institution selected by the District receives deposits from customers of other federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, that is equal to or greater than the funds invested by the District through the depository institution selected under clause (ii)(a) above (7) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are fully secured by obligations described in clause (1) and require the security being purchased by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State, (8) bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency, (9) commercial paper with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance that is rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank, (10) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission that comply with Federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7, (11) no-load mutual funds registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission that: have an average weighted maturity of less than two years and have a duration of one year or more and are invested exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph or have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities, (13) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or its successor or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or its successors, and (14) obligations issued, assumed or guaranteed by the State of Israel. Texas law also permits the District to invest bond proceeds in a guaranteed investment contract subject to the limitations set forth in Chapter 2256, as amended, Texas Government Code.

Entities such as the District may enter into securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized including accrued income, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (5) and clauses (13) and (14) above, (b) pledged irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than A or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) and clauses (13) and (14) above, clause (9) above and clauses (10) and (11) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to such investing entity or a third party designated by such investing entity; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Under State law, the District may contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term of up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance or resolution. The District has not contracted with, and has no present intention of contracting with, any such investment management firm or the State Securities Board to provide such services.

As a school district that qualifies as an "issuer" under Chapter 1371, the District is also authorized to purchase, sell, and invest its funds in corporate bonds. State law defines "corporate bonds" as senior secured debt obligations issued by a domestic business entity and rated not lower than "AA-" or the equivalent by a nationally recognized investment rating firm. The term does not include a bond that is convertible into stocks or shares in the entity issuing the bond (or an affiliate or subsidiary thereof) or any unsecured debt. Corporate bonds must finally mature not later than 3 years from their date of purchase by the school district. A school district may not (1) invest more than 15% of its monthly average fund balance (excluding bond proceeds, reserves, and other funds held for the payment of debt service) in corporate bonds; or (2) invest more than 25% of the funds invested in corporate bonds in any one domestic business entity (including subsidiaries and affiliates thereof). Corporate bonds held by a school district must be sold if they are at any time downgraded below "AA-" (or the equivalent thereof) or, with respect to a corporate bond rated "AA-" (or the equivalent thereof), such corporate bond is placed on negative credit watch. Corporate bonds are not an eligible investment for a public funds investment pool. To invest in corporate bonds, an eligible school district must first (i) amend its investment policy to authorize corporate bonds as an eligible investment, (ii) adopt procedures for monitoring rating changes in corporate bonds and liquidating an investment in corporate bonds, and (iii) identify funds eligible to be invested in corporate bonds. As of the date of this Official Statement, the District has not taken the steps necessary to allow for investing in corporate bonds or made investments in that type of instrument.

## Investment Policies

Under State law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment owned by the District and the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups,

methods to monitor the market price of investments acquired with public funds, a requirement for settlement of all transactions, except investment pool funds and mutual funds, on a delivery versus payment basis, and procedures to monitor rating changes in investments acquired with public funds and the liquidation of such investments consistent with the Texas Public Funds Investment Act. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

State law also requires that District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, any additions and changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) State law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board.

#### **Additional Provisions**

Under State law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in no-load mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the District's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

#### **Current Investments**

As of August 31, 2019, the District had \$155,394,648 (unaudited) invested in TexPool and \$8,363,472 (unaudited) invested in Lone Star Investment Pool which are government investment pools that generally have the characteristics of a money-market mutual fund) and \$14,763,555 (unaudited) invested in a local bank. The market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) is approximately 100% of the book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities, i.e., securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

#### **REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE**

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Underwriters to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The District agrees to cooperate, at the Underwriters' written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the District shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general or special consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

#### **FINANCIAL ADVISOR**

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is employed as Financial Advisor to the District to assist in the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds that is contained in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the District to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of its limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fee of the Financial Advisor for services with respect to the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and sale of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

## LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. With respect to investment in the Bonds by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Bonds be assigned a rating of not less than "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "RATINGS" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

### CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION

In the Order, the District has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). For a description of the continuing disclosure Bonds of the TEA, see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information provided to the MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the MSRB's Electronic Municipal Market Access System at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

#### Annual Reports

The District will provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement in Appendix A (such information being the "Annual Operating Report"). The District will additionally provide financial statements of the District (the "Financial Statements"), that will be (i) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in Appendix D or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation and shall be in substantially the form included in Appendix D and (ii) audited, if the District commissions an audit of such Financial Statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. The District will update and provide the Annual Operating Report within six months after the end of each fiscal year and the Financial Statements within 6 months of the end of each fiscal year, in each case beginning with the fiscal year ending in and after 2019. The District may provide the Financial Statements earlier, including at the time it provides its Annual Operating Report, but if the audit of such Financial Statements is not complete within 6 months after any such fiscal year end, then the District shall file unaudited Financial Statements within such 6-month period and audited Financial Statements for the applicable fiscal year, when and if the audit report on such Financial Statements becomes available.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by SEC Rule 15c2-12 (the "Rule").

The District's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the Annual Operating Report must be provided by the last day of February in each year unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change.

#### Notice of Certain Events

The District will also provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner (but not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) appointment of a successor or additional trustee or the change of name of a trustee, if material; (15) incurrence of a financial obligation of the District, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the District, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the District, any of which reflect financial difficulties. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide annual financial information in accordance with their agreement described above under "Annual Reports". The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB. In the Order, the District adopted policies and procedures to ensure timely compliance with continuing disclosure undertakings. Neither the Bonds nor the Bond Order make any provision for a bond trustee, debt service reserves, credit enhancement (except for the Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) of in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District. For the

purposes of the above described event notices (15) and (16), the term "financial obligation" means a (i) debt obligation, (ii) derivative instrument entered into in connection with, or pledged as security or a source of payment for, an existing or planned debt obligation, or (iii) a guarantee of (i) or (ii); provided however, that a "financial obligation" shall not include municipal securities as to which a final official statement (as defined in the Rule) has been provided to the MSRB consistent with the Rule.

### **Availability of Information**

Effective July 1, 2009 (the "EMMA Effective Date"), the SEC implemented amendments to the Rule which approved the establishment by the MSRB of EMMA, which is now the sole successor to the national municipal securities information repositories with respect to filings made in connection with undertakings made under the Rule after the EMMA Effective Date. Commencing with the EMMA Effective Date, all information and documentation filing required to be made by the District in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB.

With respect to debt of the District issued prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the District remains obligated to make annual required filings, as well as notices of material events, under its continuing disclosure obligations relating to those debt obligations (which includes a continuing obligation to make such filings with the Texas state information depository (the "SID")). Prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas (the "MAC") had been designated by the State and approved by the SEC staff as a qualified SID. Subsequent to the EMMA Effective Date, the MAC entered into a Subscription Agreement with the MSRB pursuant to which the MSRB makes available to the MAC, in electronic format, all Texas-issuer continuing disclosure documents and related information posted to EMMA's website simultaneously with such posting. Until the District receives notice of a change in this contractual agreement between the MAC and EMMA or of a failure of either party to perform as specified thereunder, the District has determined, in reliance on guidance from the MAC, that making its continuing disclosure filings solely with the MSRB will satisfy its obligations to make filings with the SID pursuant to its continuing disclosure agreements entered into prior to the EMMA Effective Date.

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that has been provided except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if, but only if, (1) the agreement, as so amended, would have permitted Underwriters to purchase or sell Bonds in the initial primary offering in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent to the amendment or (b) any qualified person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. If the District amends its agreement, it has agreed to include with the financial information and operating data next provided, in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and operating data so provided.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule.

## **VERIFICATION OF MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS**

Public Finance Partners LLC will deliver to the District, on or before the settlement date of the Bonds, its verification report indicating that it has verified the mathematical accuracy of the mathematical computations of the adequacy of the cash and the maturing principal of and interest on the Defeasance Securities, to pay, when due or upon early redemption, the principal of, interest on and related call premium requirements, if any, of the Refunded Bonds. Public Finance Partners LLC relied on the accuracy, completeness and reliability of all information provided to it by, and on all decisions and approvals of, the District. In addition, Public Finance Partners LLC has relied on any information provided to it by the District retained advisors, consultants or legal counsel.

## **LITIGATION**

In the opinion of District officials, except as may be described in this Official Statement, the District is not a party to any litigation or other proceeding pending or to their knowledge threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal) which, if decided adversely to the District, would have a material adverse effect on the financial condition of the District.

At the time of the initial delivery of the Bonds, the District will provide the Underwriters with a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Bonds or that affects the payment and security of the Bonds or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale or delivery of the Bonds.

## **FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and

market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

### UNDERWRITING

The Underwriters have agreed, subject to certain customary conditions, to purchase the Bonds at a price equal to the initial offering prices to the public, as shown on the inside cover page hereof, less an Underwriters' discount of \$106,097.69, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from the Dated Date to the date of the closing. The Underwriters' obligations are subject to certain conditions precedent, and the Underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the Bonds, if any Bonds are purchased. The Bonds may be offered and sold to certain dealers and others at prices lower than such public offering prices, and such public prices may be changed, from time to time, by the Underwriters.

The Underwriters have provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Underwriters have reviewed the information in this Official Statement pursuant to their responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws, but the Underwriters do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

Piper Jaffray & Co., one of the underwriters of the Bonds, has entered into a distribution agreement ("Distribution Agreement") with Charles Schwab & Co., Inc. ("CS&Co") for the retail distribution of certain securities offerings including the Bonds, at the original issue prices. Pursuant to the Distribution Agreement, CS&Co. will purchase Bonds from Piper at the original issue price less a negotiated portion of the selling concession applicable to any Bonds that CS&Co. sells.

Wells Fargo Securities is the trade name for certain securities-related capital markets and investment banking services of Wells Fargo & Company and its subsidiaries, including Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, which conducts its municipal securities sales, trading and underwriting operations through the Wells Fargo Bank, NA Municipal Products Group, a separately identifiable department of Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission as a municipal securities dealer pursuant to Section 15B(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, acting through its Municipal Products Group ("WFBNA"), one of the underwriters of the Bonds, has entered into an agreement (the "WFA Distribution Agreement") with its affiliate, Wells Fargo Clearing Services, LLC (which uses the trade name "Wells Fargo Advisors") ("WFA"), for the distribution of certain municipal securities offerings, including the Bonds. Pursuant to the WFA Distribution Agreement, WFBNA will share a portion of its underwriting or remarketing agent compensation, as applicable, with respect to the Bonds with WFA. WFBNA has also entered into an agreement (the "WFSLLC Distribution Agreement") with its affiliate Wells Fargo Securities, LLC ("WFSLLC"), for the distribution of municipal securities offerings, including the Bonds. Pursuant to the WFSLLC Distribution Agreement, WFBNA pays a portion of WFSLLC's expenses based on its municipal securities transactions. WFBNA, WFSLLC, and WFA are each wholly-owned subsidiaries of Wells Fargo & Company.

### CONCLUDING STATEMENT

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer of solicitation.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources which the District considers to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will ever be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Order contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Order. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such summarized documents for further information. Reference is made to official documents in all respects.

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, SEC Rule 15c2-12.

The Order also approved the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorized its further use in the re-offering of the Bonds by the Underwriters.

/s/ Chad Turner

---

President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

/s/ Elizabeth Rhoden Harrell

---

Secretary, Board of Trustees

**NEW CANEY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**Schedule I - Schedule of Refunded Bonds**

**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2010**

<b>Maturities Being Redeemed</b>	<b>Original CUSIP</b>	<b>Principal Amount Outstanding</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Principal Amount Being Refunded</b>	<b>Call Date</b>	<b>Principal Amount Unrefunded</b>
2/15/2021	-	\$ 105,000.00	4.000%	\$ 105,000.00 <sup>(1)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2022	643153E62	110,000.00	4.000%	110,000.00 <sup>(1)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2023	-	115,000.00	4.000%	115,000.00 <sup>(2)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2024	643153E70	120,000.00	4.000%	120,000.00 <sup>(2)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2025	-	130,000.00	3.750%	130,000.00 <sup>(3)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2026	643153E88	130,000.00	3.750%	130,000.00 <sup>(3)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2027	-	135,000.00	4.000%	135,000.00 <sup>(4)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2028	643153E96	140,000.00	4.000%	140,000.00 <sup>(4)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2029	-	145,000.00	4.125%	145,000.00 <sup>(5)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2030	643153F20	155,000.00	4.125%	155,000.00 <sup>(5)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2031	-	165,000.00	4.375%	165,000.00 <sup>(6)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2032	-	170,000.00	4.375%	170,000.00 <sup>(6)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2033	-	180,000.00	4.375%	180,000.00 <sup>(6)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2034	643153F38	1,585,000.00	4.375%	1,585,000.00 <sup>(6)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2035	643153F46	1,655,000.00	4.375%	1,655,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2036	-	1,730,000.00	4.500%	1,730,000.00 <sup>(7)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2037	-	1,810,000.00	4.500%	1,810,000.00 <sup>(7)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2038	-	1,890,000.00	4.500%	1,890,000.00 <sup>(7)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2039	643153F53	1,975,000.00	4.500%	1,975,000.00 <sup>(7)</sup>	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
		<u>\$ 12,445,000.00</u>		<u>\$ 12,445,000.00</u>		<u>\$ -</u>

- (1) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$215,000 that matures February 15, 2022.  
 (2) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$235,000 that matures February 15, 2024.  
 (3) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$260,000 that matures February 15, 2026.  
 (4) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$275,000 that matures February 15, 2028.  
 (5) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$300,000 that matures February 15, 2030.  
 (6) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$2,100,000 that matures February 15, 2034.  
 (7) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$7,405,000 that matures February 15, 2039.

**Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2010**

<b>Maturities Being Redeemed</b>	<b>Original CUSIP</b>	<b>Principal Amount Outstanding</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Principal Amount Being Refunded</b>	<b>Call Date</b>	<b>Principal Amount Unrefunded</b>
2/15/2021	643153G45	\$ 465,000.00	4.000%	\$ 465,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2022	643153G52	480,000.00	4.000%	480,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2023	643153G60	500,000.00	4.000%	500,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2024	643153G78	520,000.00	4.000%	520,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2025	643153G86	540,000.00	4.000%	540,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2026	643153G94	560,000.00	4.000%	560,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2027	643153H28	585,000.00	4.000%	585,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2028	643153H36	610,000.00	4.000%	610,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2029	643153H44	640,000.00	4.000%	640,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
2/15/2030	643153H51	660,000.00	4.125%	660,000.00	February 15, 2020 @ Par	-
		<u>\$ 5,560,000.00</u>		<u>\$ 5,560,000.00</u>		<u>\$ -</u>

(this page intentionally left blank)



**APPENDIX A**  
**FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT**

(this page intentionally left blank)

**NEW CANEY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**Financial Information**

**ASSESSED VALUATION <sup>(1)</sup>**

2018/19 Total Valuation.....		\$ 4,987,077,528
Less Exemptions & Deductions <sup>(2)</sup> :		
State Homestead Exemption	\$ 301,864,702	
State Over-65 Exemption	36,419,225	
Disabled Homestead Exemption Loss	32,802,508	
Local Option Over-65 Exemption	10,000	
Veterans Exemption Loss	3,542,998	
Surviving Spouse 100% Disabled Veteran Loss	1,697,900	
Surviving Spouse Deceased First Responder Loss	88,630	
Productivity Loss	72,826,144	
Prorations & Other Partial Exemptions	1,255,413	
Homestead Cap Loss	74,274,506	
	<u>\$ 524,782,026</u>	
2018/19 Net Taxable Valuation .....		\$ 4,462,295,502
2019/20 Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(3)</sup> .....		\$ 4,847,450,782

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division. The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment that was on the ballot in the November 3, 2015 election increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES -- Residential Homestead Exemptions" in the Official Statement.

<sup>(2)</sup> Excludes the values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers which totaled \$138,160,898 in 2018/19.

<sup>(3)</sup> Source: Montgomery Central Appraisal District and Harris County Appraisal District Certified Values as of September 2019. Includes \$214,679,759 of ARB values which are subject to change.

**VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT**

Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding <sup>(1)</sup>		\$ 512,885,359
Less: The Refunded Bonds		(18,005,000)
Plus: The Bonds		16,875,000
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		<u>\$ 511,755,359</u>
Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (As of August 31, 2019) <sup>(2)</sup>		<u>(4,054,753)</u>
Net General Obligation Debt		\$ 507,700,606
Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(3)</sup>	10.47%	
2019 Population Estimate <sup>(4)</sup>	85,361	
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	\$56,788	
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	\$5,948	

<sup>(1)</sup> Excludes interest accreted on capital appreciation bonds.

<sup>(2)</sup> Source: New Caney ISD Estimate.

<sup>(3)</sup> The ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation above does not include the portion of the District's outstanding debt service that is payable from any debt subsidies that may be provided by the State of Texas. The District has received state funding assistance for voted bond debt service equal to 7% of its debt service requirements, which was subject to tax effort rules and state funding program limits, for its unlimited tax debt service for the 2019/20 fiscal year. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement and "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018" in Appendix D for more information relative to the District's outstanding obligations.

<sup>(4)</sup> Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

**PROPERTY TAX RATES AND COLLECTIONS**

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(1)</sup>		% Collections <sup>(4)</sup>	
	Valuation	Tax Rate	Current <sup>(5)</sup>	Total <sup>(5)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 1,403,755,006 <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 1.6400 <sup>(6)</sup>	96.83%	101.44%
2007/08	1,628,307,021 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.4150 <sup>(6)</sup>	97.20%	100.64%
2008/09	1,902,216,996 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.4400	97.12%	100.02%
2009/10	2,032,733,864 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.4800	96.75%	99.11%
2010/11	2,076,233,536 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.5400	96.99%	99.53%
2011/12	2,220,942,251 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.5400	97.14%	99.82%
2012/13	2,363,898,110 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.5400	97.79%	100.67%
2013/14	2,556,225,775 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.6700	98.24%	100.48%
2014/15	2,803,969,485 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.6700	98.39%	100.22%
2015/16	3,215,791,497 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.6700	98.23%	99.62%
2016/17	3,645,605,882 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.6700	98.23%	99.75%
2017/18	3,976,159,760 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.6700	98.40%	100.10%
2018/19	4,462,295,502 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.6700	98.00% <sup>(8)</sup>	98.00% <sup>(8)</sup>
2019/20	4,847,450,782 <sup>(2)(3)</sup>	1.5684 <sup>(7)</sup>		

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

<sup>(2)</sup> The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 election increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

<sup>(3)</sup> Source: Montgomery Central Appraisal District and Harris County Appraisal District Certified Values as of September 2019. Includes \$214,679,759 of ARB values which are subject to change.

<sup>(4)</sup> Source: New Caney ISD Audited Financial Statements.

<sup>(5)</sup> Excludes penalties and interest.

<sup>(6)</sup> The declines in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax for the 2006/07 and 2007/08 fiscal years are a function of House Bill 1 adopted by the Texas Legislature in May 2006. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

<sup>(7)</sup> The decline in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax from the 2018/19 fiscal year to the 2019/20 fiscal year is a function of House Bill 3 adopted by the Texas Legislature in June 2019. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in Official Statement.

<sup>(8)</sup> Source: New Caney ISD Estimate.

**TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION <sup>(1)</sup>**

	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20 <sup>(2)</sup>
Maintenance & Operations	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.0684
Debt Service	\$0.5000	\$0.5000	\$0.5000	\$0.5000	\$0.5000
<b>Total Tax Rate</b>	<b>\$1.6700</b>	<b>\$1.6700</b>	<b>\$1.6700</b>	<b>\$1.6700</b>	<b>\$1.5684</b>

(1) On August 30, 2013, the District successfully held a tax ratification election. The voters of the District approved a maintenance and operations tax not to exceed \$1.17.  
 (2) The decline in the District's Maintenance & Operations Tax from the 2018/19 fiscal year to the 2019/20 fiscal year is a function of House Bill 3 adopted by the Texas Legislature in June 2019. See "State and Local Funding of School Districts in Texas" herein.

**VALUATION AND FUNDED DEBT HISTORY**

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation	Bond Debt Outstanding <sup>(1)</sup>	Ratio Debt to A.V. <sup>(2)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 1,403,755,006	\$ 153,984,458	10.97%
2007/08	1,628,307,021	172,730,458	10.61%
2008/09	1,902,216,996	196,665,453	10.34%
2009/10	2,032,733,864	205,705,492	10.12%
2010/11	2,076,233,536	202,104,257	9.73%
2011/12	2,220,942,251	250,515,776	11.28%
2012/13	2,363,898,110	276,909,358	11.71%
2013/14	2,556,225,775	279,004,409	10.91%
2014/15	2,803,969,485	353,859,957	12.62%
2015/16	3,215,791,497	345,046,645	10.73%
2016/17	3,645,605,882	411,228,762	11.28%
2017/18	3,976,159,760	461,040,353	11.60%
2018/19	4,462,295,502	512,885,359	11.49%
2019/20	4,847,450,782 <sup>(3)</sup>	504,345,000 <sup>(4)</sup>	10.40%

(1) At fiscal year end. Excludes interest accreted on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.  
 (2) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018" in Appendix D for more information.  
 (3) Sources: Montgomery Central Appraisal District and Harris County Appraisal District Certified Values as of September 2019. Includes \$214,679,759 of ARB values which are subject to change.  
 (4) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds.

**ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT STATEMENT**

Taxing Body	Amount	Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
E. Montgomery Co MUD #3	\$ 11,745,000	100.00%	\$ 11,745,000
E. Montgomery Co MUD #6	4,295,000	100.00%	4,295,000
Harris County	1,599,402,125	0.01%	159,940
Harris County Department of Education	6,320,000	0.01%	632
Harris County Flood Control	83,075,000	0.01%	8,308
Harris County Hospital District	57,300,000	0.01%	5,730
Harris County Toll Road	-	0.01%	-
Houston, City of	3,559,330,055	0.22%	7,830,526
Kings Manor MUD	12,080,000	100.00%	12,080,000
Lone Star College System	579,645,000	2.33%	13,505,729
Montgomery County	522,350,000	7.63%	39,855,305
Montgomery County MUD #24	5,025,000	100.00%	5,025,000
Montgomery County MUD #56	2,560,000	100.00%	2,560,000
Montgomery County MUD #83	13,800,000	100.00%	13,800,000
Montgomery County MUD #84	28,810,000	100.00%	28,810,000
Montgomery County MUD #98	16,265,000	100.00%	16,265,000
New Caney MUD	35,503,524	100.00%	35,503,524
Port of Houston Authority	593,754,397	0.01%	59,375
Porter MUD - Auburn Trails (1)	5,500,000	100.00%	5,500,000
Porter MUD - Auburn Trails (2)	3,995,000	100.00%	3,995,000
Porter MUD	24,965,000	100.00%	24,965,000
Porter MUD - Hendricks Defined Area	4,930,000	100.00%	4,930,000
Roman Forest Consolidated MUD	200,000	100.00%	200,000
Roman Forest PUD #4	765,000	100.00%	765,000
Roman Forest, City of	3,385,000	100.00%	3,385,000
Valley Ranch MUD #1	23,060,000	100.00%	23,060,000
Valley Ranch Town Center District	14,925,000	100.00%	14,925,000
Woodbranch Village, City of	1,435,000	100.00%	1,435,000
Woodridge MUD	10,435,000	100.00%	10,435,000
<b>Total Overlapping Debt <sup>(1)</sup></b>			<b>\$ 285,104,069</b>
<b>New Caney Independent School District <sup>(2) (3)</sup></b>			<b>507,700,606</b>
<b>Total Direct &amp; Overlapping Debt <sup>(2) (3)</sup></b>			<b>\$ 792,804,675</b>
<b>Ratio of Net Direct &amp; Overlapping Debt to Net Taxable Valuation</b>		<b>16.36%</b>	
<b>Per Capita Direct &amp; Overlapping Debt</b>		<b>\$9,288</b>	

(1) Equals gross debt less self-supporting debt.  
 (2) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds.  
 (3) Excludes interest accreted on outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. The District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information (except for the amounts relating to the District), and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete.

**PRINCIPAL TAXPAYERS <sup>(1)</sup>****2018/19 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(2)</sup>**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Kingwood Medical Plaza Ltd	Medical Complex	\$ 143,221,320	3.21%
Wal-Mart Stores Inc.	Retail Store & Distribution Center	137,059,510	3.07%
Administaff Services, Inc.	Employment Leasing Company	46,796,170	1.05%
Entergy Texas Inc.	Electric Utility	37,187,000	0.83%
Sir Kingwood Villas LLC	Real Estate Development	34,332,400	0.77%
KRG Kingwood LLC	Developer	32,642,580	0.73%
MDC Kings Landing LP	Commercial Building	32,462,960	0.73%
BPP Alphabet MF Kingwood LP	Commercial Building	26,508,080	0.59%
Kingwood Apartments LLC	Apartment Complex	26,500,000	0.59%
Christian James Properties	Apartment Complex	24,296,530	0.54%
		<u>\$ 541,006,550</u>	<u>12.12%</u>

**2017/18 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(2)</sup>**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Kingwood Medical Plaza Ltd	Medical Complex	\$ 128,851,670	3.24%
Wal-Mart Stores Inc.	Retail Store & Distribution Center	126,813,939	3.19%
Entergy Texas Inc.	Electric Utility	41,951,810	1.06%
Administaff Services, Inc.	Employment Leasing Company	41,890,362	1.05%
KPG Kingwood LLC	Land / Improvements	27,549,710	0.69%
Sir Kingwood Villas LLC	Real Estate Development	26,200,000	0.66%
Valley Ranch Town Center One Ltd	Shopping Center	24,119,630	0.61%
Kingwood Apartments LLC	Apartment Complex	22,871,480	0.58%
200 Kellington No 3A Partnership	Real Estate Development	22,000,000	0.55%
Lawford No 21 LLC	Real Estate Development	21,726,320	0.55%
		<u>\$ 483,974,921</u>	<u>12.17%</u>

**2016/17 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(2)</sup>**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Kingwood Medical Plaza Ltd	Medical Complex	\$ 137,298,086	3.77%
Wal-Mart Stores Inc.	Retail Store & Distribution Center	121,250,713	3.33%
Administaff Services, Inc.	Employment Leasing Company	41,400,636	1.14%
Entergy Texas Inc.	Electric Utility	39,469,890	1.08%
Sir Kingwood Villas LLC	Real Estate Development	26,604,340	0.73%
Kingwood Apartments LLC	Apartment Complex	26,109,530	0.72%
200 Kellington No 3A Partnership	Real Estate Development	24,000,000	0.66%
KPG Kingwood LLC	Land / Improvements	23,325,190	0.64%
Lawford No 21 LLC	Real Estate Development	21,934,570	0.60%
Stanmore/ADEF Kingwood LP	Real Estate Development	21,919,340	0.60%
		<u>\$ 483,312,295</u>	<u>13.26%</u>

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(2) As shown in the table above, the top ten taxpayers in the District account for in excess of 10% of the District's tax base. Adverse developments in economic conditions, especially in a particular industry in which any one of these large taxpayers participates, could adversely impact these businesses and, consequently, the tax values in the District, resulting in less local tax revenue. If any major taxpayer, or a combination of top taxpayers, were to default in the payment of taxes, the ability of the District to make timely payment of debt service on the Bonds may be dependent on its ability to enforce and liquidate its tax lien, which is a time consuming process that may only occur annually. See "REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES" and "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies" in this Official Statement.

**CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION BY USE CATEGORY <sup>(1)</sup>**

<b>Category</b>	<b>2018/19</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>2017/18</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>2016/17</b>	<b>% of Total</b>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 2,818,117,402	56.51%	\$ 2,672,667,474	59.18%	\$ 2,403,638,448	58.01%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	327,219,543	6.56%	252,030,736	5.58%	258,888,223	6.25%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	197,914,700	3.97%	140,516,041	3.11%	111,311,012	2.69%
Real, Acreage	84,399,698	1.69%	82,792,380	1.83%	80,011,190	1.93%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	67,764,900	1.36%	71,771,001	1.59%	68,505,841	1.65%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	939,210,186	18.83%	798,501,784	17.68%	712,965,025	17.21%
Oil & Gas	20,990	0.00%	15,570	0.00%	19,160	0.00%
Utilities	71,112,790	1.43%	73,986,016	1.64%	72,290,190	1.74%
Tangible Personal, Commercial	333,107,800	6.68%	296,148,024	6.56%	305,824,742	7.38%
Tangible Personal, Industrial	27,290,688	0.55%	30,489,939	0.68%	35,130,277	0.85%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	65,811,619	1.32%	58,018,007	1.28%	49,477,400	1.19%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	42,919,580	0.86%	29,132,240	0.65%	36,695,869	0.89%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	<u>12,187,632</u>	<u>0.24%</u>	<u>10,447,743</u>	<u>0.23%</u>	<u>8,827,904</u>	<u>0.21%</u>
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 4,987,077,528</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 4,516,516,955</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 4,143,585,281</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 74,274,506		\$ 114,370,669		\$ 96,503,222	
Productivity Loss	72,826,144		70,351,534		67,131,967	
Exemptions	<u>377,681,376</u> <sup>(2)</sup>		<u>355,634,992</u> <sup>(2)</sup>		<u>334,344,210</u> <sup>(2)</sup>	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(3)</sup>	<b>\$ 524,782,026</b>		<b>\$ 540,357,195</b>		<b>\$ 497,979,399</b>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 4,462,295,502</b>		<b>\$ 3,976,159,760</b>		<b>\$ 3,645,605,882</b>	

<b>Category</b>	<b>2015/16</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>2014/15</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>2013/14</b>	<b>% of Total</b>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 2,086,679,758	57.04%	\$ 1,756,845,511	56.22%	\$ 1,527,266,070	53.82%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	246,609,482	6.74%	212,291,484	6.79%	208,936,348	7.36%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	99,591,960	2.72%	100,288,570	3.21%	103,719,900	3.65%
Real, Acreage	68,089,170	1.86%	71,426,640	2.29%	74,431,360	2.62%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	59,995,243	1.64%	53,164,190	1.70%	52,599,324	1.85%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	643,668,323	17.60%	510,378,523	16.33%	476,758,867	16.80%
Oil & Gas	30,880	0.00%	86,962	0.00%	394,790	0.01%
Utilities	67,523,860	1.85%	64,374,060	2.06%	57,163,410	2.01%
Tangible Personal, Commercial	293,268,219	8.02%	270,328,241	8.65%	248,863,047	8.77%
Tangible Personal, Industrial	43,529,430	1.19%	43,238,753	1.38%	40,185,219	1.42%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	35,773,952	0.98%	26,359,368	0.84%	33,033,048	1.16%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	4,998,979	0.14%	8,134,029	0.26%	7,314,292	0.26%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	<u>8,250,070</u>	<u>0.23%</u>	<u>7,991,932</u>	<u>0.26%</u>	<u>7,309,317</u>	<u>0.26%</u>
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 3,658,009,326</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 3,124,908,263</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 2,837,974,992</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 79,143,901		\$ 63,572,432		\$ 28,735,102	
Productivity Loss	53,443,860		56,028,648		58,037,565	
Exemptions	<u>309,630,068</u> <sup>(2)</sup>		<u>201,337,698</u>		<u>194,976,550</u>	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(3)</sup>	<b>\$ 442,217,829</b>		<b>\$ 320,938,778</b>		<b>\$ 281,749,217</b>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 3,215,791,497</b>		<b>\$ 2,803,969,485</b>		<b>\$ 2,556,225,775</b>	

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(2) The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(3) Excludes values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

**PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>	Less: Refunded Bonds	Plus: The Bonds	Total <sup>(1)</sup>	Bonds Unpaid At Year End	Percent of Principal Retired
2020	\$ 7,410,358.75	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 7,410,358.75	\$ 504,345,000.00	1.45%
2021	8,685,000.00	570,000.00	-	8,115,000.00	496,230,000.00	3.03%
2022	9,080,000.00	590,000.00	-	8,490,000.00	487,740,000.00	4.69%
2023	9,500,000.00	615,000.00	-	8,885,000.00	478,855,000.00	6.43%
2024	10,270,000.00	640,000.00	670,000.00	10,300,000.00	468,555,000.00	8.44%
2025	10,730,000.00	670,000.00	705,000.00	10,765,000.00	457,790,000.00	10.55%
2026	11,215,000.00	690,000.00	735,000.00	11,260,000.00	446,530,000.00	12.75%
2027	11,715,000.00	720,000.00	775,000.00	11,770,000.00	434,760,000.00	15.05%
2028	12,210,000.00	750,000.00	815,000.00	12,275,000.00	422,485,000.00	17.44%
2029	12,705,000.00	785,000.00	865,000.00	12,785,000.00	409,700,000.00	19.94%
2030	13,215,000.00	815,000.00	895,000.00	13,295,000.00	396,405,000.00	22.54%
2031	13,740,000.00	165,000.00	240,000.00	13,815,000.00	382,590,000.00	25.24%
2032	14,310,000.00	170,000.00	245,000.00	14,385,000.00	368,205,000.00	28.05%
2033	14,935,000.00	180,000.00	255,000.00	15,010,000.00	353,195,000.00	30.98%
2034	15,615,000.00	1,585,000.00	1,650,000.00	15,680,000.00	337,515,000.00	34.05%
2035	16,300,000.00	1,655,000.00	1,700,000.00	16,345,000.00	321,170,000.00	37.24%
2036	17,005,000.00	1,730,000.00	1,750,000.00	17,025,000.00	304,145,000.00	40.57%
2037	17,765,000.00	1,810,000.00	1,805,000.00	17,760,000.00	286,385,000.00	44.04%
2038	18,560,000.00	1,890,000.00	1,860,000.00	18,530,000.00	267,855,000.00	47.66%
2039	19,395,000.00	1,975,000.00	1,910,000.00	19,330,000.00	248,525,000.00	51.44%
2040	19,090,000.00			19,090,000.00	229,435,000.00	55.17%
2041	19,970,000.00			19,970,000.00	209,465,000.00	59.07%
2042	20,880,000.00			20,880,000.00	188,585,000.00	63.15%
2043	21,825,000.00			21,825,000.00	166,760,000.00	67.41%
2044	22,790,000.00			22,790,000.00	143,970,000.00	71.87%
2045	23,805,000.00			23,805,000.00	120,165,000.00	76.52%
2046	23,420,000.00			23,420,000.00	96,745,000.00	81.10%
2047	24,490,000.00			24,490,000.00	72,255,000.00	85.88%
2048	20,475,000.00			20,475,000.00	51,780,000.00	89.88%
2049	21,260,000.00			21,260,000.00	30,520,000.00	94.04%
2050	22,090,000.00			22,090,000.00	8,430,000.00	98.35%
2051	8,430,000.00			8,430,000.00	-	100.00%
Total	<u>\$ 512,885,358.75</u>	<u>\$ 18,005,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 16,875,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 511,755,358.75</u>		

(1) Excludes the accreted value of outstanding capital appreciation bonds.

**DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Debt Service <sup>(1)</sup>	Less:	Plus:			Combined Total <sup>(1) (2) (3)</sup>
		Refunded Bonds	The Bonds <sup>(2)</sup>			
			Principal	Interest	Total	
2020	\$ 29,598,717.51	\$ 771,856.26	\$ -	\$ 471,400.56	\$ 471,400.56	\$ 29,298,261.81
2021	29,597,167.51	1,330,456.26	-	597,550.00	597,550.00	28,864,261.25
2022	32,549,736.26	1,327,256.26	-	597,550.00	597,550.00	31,820,030.00
2023	32,550,442.50	1,328,156.26	-	597,550.00	597,550.00	31,819,836.24
2024	32,873,596.24	1,328,056.26	670,000.00	580,800.00	1,250,800.00	32,796,339.98
2025	32,870,531.24	1,332,018.76	705,000.00	546,425.00	1,251,425.00	32,789,937.48
2026	32,870,743.74	1,325,143.76	735,000.00	510,425.00	1,245,425.00	32,791,024.98
2027	32,870,181.25	1,327,106.26	775,000.00	472,675.00	1,247,675.00	32,790,749.99
2028	32,870,237.51	1,327,706.26	815,000.00	432,925.00	1,247,925.00	32,790,456.25
2029	32,872,696.88	1,331,915.63	865,000.00	390,925.00	1,255,925.00	32,796,706.25
2030	32,871,734.38	1,329,315.63	895,000.00	355,875.00	1,250,875.00	32,793,293.75
2031	32,869,109.38	658,896.88	240,000.00	338,850.00	578,850.00	32,789,062.50
2032	32,871,062.50	656,568.75	245,000.00	331,575.00	576,575.00	32,791,068.75
2033	32,870,093.75	658,912.50	255,000.00	324,075.00	579,075.00	32,790,256.25
2034	32,873,715.63	2,025,303.13	1,650,000.00	295,500.00	1,945,500.00	32,793,912.50
2035	32,870,428.13	2,024,428.13	1,700,000.00	245,250.00	1,945,250.00	32,791,250.00
2036	32,870,806.25	2,024,300.00	1,750,000.00	193,500.00	1,943,500.00	32,790,006.25
2037	32,873,618.75	2,024,650.00	1,805,000.00	140,175.00	1,945,175.00	32,794,143.75
2038	32,871,656.25	2,021,400.00	1,860,000.00	85,200.00	1,945,200.00	32,795,456.25
2039	32,872,443.75	2,019,437.50	1,910,000.00	28,650.00	1,938,650.00	32,791,656.25
2040	31,712,850.00					31,712,850.00
2041	31,718,925.00					31,718,925.00
2042	31,714,450.00					31,714,450.00
2043	31,717,950.00					31,717,950.00
2044	31,713,850.00					31,713,850.00
2045	31,716,225.00					31,716,225.00
2046	30,109,225.00					30,109,225.00
2047	29,738,650.00					29,738,650.00
2048	24,316,800.00					24,316,800.00
2049	23,735,700.00					23,735,700.00
2050	23,148,800.00					23,148,800.00
2051	8,598,600.00					8,598,600.00
	<u>\$ 980,180,744.41</u>	<u>\$ 28,172,884.49</u>	<u>\$ 16,875,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 7,536,875.56</u>	<u>\$ 24,411,875.56</u>	<u>\$ 976,419,735.48</u>

(1) Includes the accreted value of outstanding capital appreciation bonds. Interest on the Series 2018 Bonds is calculated at the Initial Rate through August 14, 2021, and for purposes of illustration, at the Highest Rate thereafter through stated maturity.

(2) Includes accrued interest in the amount of \$29,877.50.

(3) Based on its wealth per student, the District expects to receive approximately \$2,076,229 of state financial assistance for the payment of debt service for the fiscal year 2019/20. The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**TAX ADEQUACY WITH RESPECT TO THE DISTRICT'S BONDS**

Projected Maximum Debt Service Requirement <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 32,796,706.25
Projected State Financial Assistance for Debt Service in 2019/20 <sup>(2)</sup>	2,076,229.00
Projected Net Debt Service Requirement <sup>(1) (2)</sup>	\$ 30,720,477.25
 \$0.63375 Tax Rate @ 100% Collections Produces	 \$ 30,720,477.25
 2019/20 Net Taxable Valuation	 \$ 4,847,450,782

(1) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds.

(2) The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

(3) Certain of the District's bonds are "old debt" that are not subject to the 50-cent test. Consequently and despite the fact that the table above indicates a tax rate in excess of \$0.50, the District may be required to utilize State tier one funds to pass the Attorney General's 50-cent test. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - State Funding for Local School Districts, "DEBT LIMITATIONS" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS."

**AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS**

The District has \$80,000,000 of authorized but unissued unlimited ad valorem tax bonds from the May 5, 2018 election. The District may also incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.



COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES <sup>(1)</sup>

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
<b>Beginning Fund Balance</b>	\$ 16,845,452	\$ 18,118,081	\$ 21,472,262	\$ 24,226,599	\$ 23,456,512
<b>Revenues:</b>					
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 30,077,175	\$ 33,234,724	\$ 37,484,863	\$ 42,977,335	\$ 46,597,239
State Sources	70,656,191	79,063,327	83,770,896	82,434,407	93,946,630
Federal Sources & Other	984,730	1,053,229	1,160,166	1,195,137	1,350,165
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>\$ 101,718,096</b>	<b>\$ 113,351,280</b>	<b>\$ 122,415,925</b>	<b>\$ 126,606,879</b>	<b>\$ 141,894,034</b>
<b>Expenditures:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 56,494,975	\$ 62,784,460	\$ 67,239,980	\$ 72,282,641	\$ 77,483,725
Instructional Resources & Media Services	980,454	1,188,650	1,215,230	1,165,144	1,286,262
Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	2,467,821	2,472,385	2,459,379	2,799,283	2,420,634
Instructional Leadership	1,128,505	1,250,973	1,212,628	1,318,951	1,390,739
School Leadership	6,243,981	7,239,077	7,749,853	8,382,006	8,652,562
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	3,657,034	3,924,727	4,081,816	4,327,325	4,747,810
Social Work Services	60,783	1,437	716	1,588	-
Health Services	933,617	1,126,192	1,129,283	1,231,645	1,346,916
Student (Pupil) Transportation	5,862,198	5,295,473	7,190,317	7,115,152	7,802,699
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	3,722,339	4,442,303	5,061,238	5,207,250	5,747,139
General Administration	3,950,757	3,983,004	4,640,254	5,295,034	5,374,283
Plant Maintenance and Operations	11,006,321	11,775,139	12,230,804	13,044,762	14,417,718
Security and Monitoring Services	967,811	1,016,980	1,102,987	1,380,984	1,448,408
Data Processing Services	2,219,468	3,085,033	3,877,883	3,299,887	4,154,452
Community Services	9,875	12,173	345	89	13,030
Principal on Long-term Debt	433,234	-	-	-	-
Interest on Long-term Debt	11,524	-	-	-	-
Facilities Acquisition and Construction	-	-	21,212	-	-
Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed Programs	425	1,530	1,870	-	-
Other Intergovernmental Charges	334,317	397,563	445,793	525,225	599,850
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<b>\$ 100,485,439</b>	<b>\$ 109,997,099</b>	<b>\$ 119,661,588</b>	<b>\$ 127,376,966</b>	<b>\$ 136,886,227</b>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues over Expenditures	\$ 1,232,657	\$ 3,354,181	\$ 2,754,337	\$ (770,087) <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 5,007,807
<b>Other Resources and (Uses):</b>					
Sale of Real or Personal Property	\$ 8,020	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Other Resources	31,952	-	-	-	-
<b>Total Other Resources (Uses)</b>	<b>\$ 39,972</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues and Other Sources over Expenditures and Other Uses	\$ 1,272,629	\$ 3,354,181	\$ 2,754,337	\$ (770,087) <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 5,007,807
<b>Ending Fund Balance <sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>\$ 18,118,081</b>	<b>\$ 21,472,262</b>	<b>\$ 24,226,599</b>	<b>\$ 23,456,512</b>	<b>\$ 28,464,319</b>

(1) See "MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS - Economic Factors and Next Year's Budgets and Rates" in Appendix D hereto for a discussion of the 2018/19 budget.

(2) Decrease attributable to the District not accruing State revenue resulting from the District's closure due to Hurricane Harvey.

(3) The District's estimated anticipated General Fund balance as of August 31, 2019 is \$32,930,938.

**CHANGE IN NET ASSETS <sup>(1)</sup>**

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
<b>Revenues:</b>					
<b>Program Revenues:</b>					
Charges for Services	\$ 2,915,704	\$ 3,758,485	\$ 3,747,000	\$ 4,009,811	\$ 4,027,444
Operating Grants and Contributions	22,990,744	22,194,683	29,082,154	26,732,661	211,669
<b>General Revenues:</b>					
Property Taxes Levied for General Purposes	29,454,249	32,104,490	36,594,423	41,507,554	45,063,546
Property Taxes Levied for Debt Service	12,554,736	13,760,961	15,650,583	17,796,195	19,253,710
Grants and Contributions Not Restricted	67,265,720	75,298,589	79,572,709	78,232,506	88,959,633
Investment Earnings	82,772	543,287	299,123	920,017	1,640,140
Miscellaneous	72,172	316,449	233,306	338,504	166,543
	<u>\$ 135,336,097</u>	<u>\$ 147,976,944</u>	<u>\$ 165,179,298</u>	<u>\$ 169,537,248</u>	<u>\$ 159,322,685</u>
<b>Expenses:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 66,611,077	\$ 71,826,346	\$ 82,407,840	\$ 86,466,944	\$ 64,335,886
Instruction Resources & Media Services	1,132,316	1,416,216	1,441,818	1,308,095	1,331,328
Curriculum & Staff Development	4,036,886	4,236,454	4,667,858	4,767,661	2,587,103
Instructional Leadership	1,133,563	1,216,946	1,258,696	1,374,059	900,859
School Leadership	6,463,320	7,301,955	8,379,203	8,783,603	6,096,219
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	4,024,125	4,268,483	4,708,441	4,943,520	3,505,476
Social Work Services	61,095	3,531	3,700	16,562	1,572
Health Services	961,611	1,127,832	1,201,490	1,252,532	937,139
Student Transportation	5,591,431	5,894,015	6,312,794	6,818,771	6,123,511
Food Service	6,894,279	7,594,791	7,927,832	8,419,371	6,821,256
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	4,927,307	6,546,972	6,841,328	6,861,543	6,152,850
General Administration	4,003,970	3,965,008	4,872,492	5,380,347	4,151,447
Plant Maintenance & Operations	11,049,368	11,642,036	12,483,923	13,101,947	12,683,183
Security and Monitoring Services	812,258	1,055,302	1,182,565	1,382,334	1,200,658
Data Processing Services	2,210,924	3,208,065	3,997,500	3,467,260	3,712,150
Community Services	23,030	33,916	26,826	128,597	132,588
Debt Service - Interest on Long-term Debt	11,795,617	12,062,337	14,307,223	16,020,751	16,815,647
Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	303,974	1,408,269	1,232,330	738,379	805,895
Other Intergovernmental Charges	334,317	397,563	445,793	525,225	599,850
Payments Related to Shared Services Arrangements	154,000	176,000	165,000	154,000	154,000
Facilities Repair and Maintenance	1,094,938	1,272,495	2,194,050	833,671	4,069,353
Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Program	425	1,530	1,870	-	-
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<u>\$ 133,619,831</u>	<u>\$ 146,656,062</u>	<u>\$ 166,060,572</u>	<u>\$ 172,745,172</u>	<u>\$ 143,117,970</u>
<b>Change in Net Assets</b>	\$ 1,716,266	\$ 1,320,882	\$ (881,274)	\$ (3,207,924)	\$ 16,204,715
<b>Beginning Net Assets</b>	\$ 19,157,361	\$ 20,873,627	\$ 5,026,347	\$ 4,145,073	\$ 937,149
<b>Prior Period Adjustment</b>	\$ -	\$ (17,168,162) <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ -	\$ -	\$ (87,245,480) <sup>(3)</sup>
<b>Ending Net Assets</b>	<u>\$ 20,873,627</u>	<u>\$ 5,026,347</u>	<u>\$ 4,145,073</u>	<u>\$ 937,149</u>	<u>\$ (70,103,616)</u>

(1) The foregoing information represents government-wide financial information provided in accordance with GASB Statement No. 34, which the District adopted for the 2002 fiscal year.

(2) The prior period adjustment resulted from the adoption of GASB Statement Nos. 68 (see "EMPLOYEES' RETIREMENT PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS" herein) and 71 (Accounting and Reporting for Pensions).

(3) In 2018, the District adopted GASB Statement No. 75 which required the District to assume their proportionate share of the net OPEB liability of the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas.

**APPENDIX B**

**GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT  
AND ITS ECONOMY**

(this page intentionally left blank)

**NEW CANEY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**General and Economic Information**

New Caney Independent School District (the "District") is located mostly in the southeastern corner of Montgomery County, Texas and includes some parts of Harris County, Texas, approximately 25 miles northeast of the City of Houston's central business district. The District is a petroleum producing and lumbering area that includes the unincorporated communities of New Caney and Porter, both located on U.S. Highway 59.

Montgomery County, Texas (the "County") was created in 1837 from Washington County, Texas. The County is located on the southern edge of the Big Thicket, a heavily forested wilderness area in southeast Texas. The economy is heavily influenced by timber and oil related businesses. The County seat is the City of Conroe.

Source: Texas Municipal Report for New Caney ISD and Montgomery County.

**Enrollment Statistics**

<u>Year Ending 8/31</u>	<u>Enrollment</u>
2009	9,130
2010	9,646
2011	10,080
2012	10,880
2013	11,551
2014	12,458
2015	13,068
2016	13,906
2017	14,681
2018	15,046
2019	16,080

**District Staff**

Teachers	1,085
Auxiliary Personnel	548
Teachers' Aides & Secretaries	348
Other	160
Administrators	<u>92</u>
	2,233

**Facilities**

<u>Campus</u>	<u>Grade Alignment</u>	<u>Enrollment</u>	<u>Capacity</u>	<u>Year Built</u>	<u>Year of Addition/ Renovation</u>
The Learning Center	1-12	79	100	1939	1999
Tavola Elementary	PK-5	643	1,000	2015	NA
Crippen Elementary	PK-5	558	1,000	1997	2013
Kings Manor Elementary	PK-5	677	900	2002	2017
New Caney Elementary	PK-5	652	900	1968	2003
Oakley Elementary	PK-5	818	1,000	2011	NA
Porter Elementary	PK-5	695	800	1965	2003
Bens Branch Elementary	PK-5	681	1,000	2004	2013
Brookwood Forest Elementary	PK-5	789	1,000	2017	NA
Valley Ranch Elementary	PK-5	832	1,000	2006	2013
Sorters Mill Elementary	PK-5	724	1,000	2007	2013
Dogwood Elementary	PK-5	699	1,000	2017	NA
New Caney Middle School	6-8	938	1,100	1972	2005, 2017
Keefer Crossing Middle School	6-8	917	1,100	1959	2013
White Oak Middle School	6-8	960	1,100	2004	NA
Woodridge Forrest Middle School	6-8	909	1,100	2014	NA
Porter High School	9-12	2,130	2,500	2010	2017
New Caney High School*	9-12	2,032	1,900	1986	2014, 2017
Infinity Early College High School	9-12	347	500	2017	2015

\*Includes Annex and CRC

**Principal Employers within the District**

<u>Name of Company</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>	<u>Number of Employees</u>
New Caney ISD	School District	2,233
Administaff	Leasing Employee Co.	830
Columbia Kingwood Medical Center	Hospital	675
Super Wal-Mart	Retail Merchant	650
Wal-Mart Distribution Center	Distribution Center	600
Kingwood College	Education	250
Randall's	Retail Food Chain	170
Home Depot	Retail Hardware	150
Gerlands Food Fair	Retail Food Chain	110
Kroger Company	Retail Food Chain	105
Brookshire Bros.	Retail Food Chain	80

**Unemployment Rates**

	<u>August 2017</u>	<u>August 2018</u>	<u>August 2019</u>
Montgomery County	4.4%	3.9%	3.5%
State of Texas	4.5%	4.0%	3.6%

*Source: Texas Workforce Commission.*

**APPENDIX C**

**FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL**

(this page intentionally left blank)





Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP  
Frost Tower  
111 West Houston Street, Suite 1800  
San Antonio, Texas 78205-3792  
United States

Tel +1 210 224 5575  
Fax +1 210 270 7205  
nortonrosefulbright.com

## FINAL

IN REGARD to the authorization and issuance of the “New Caney Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019” (the *Bonds*), dated November 1, 2019, in the aggregate principal amount of \$16,875,000, we have reviewed the legality and validity of the issuance thereof by the Board of Trustees of the New Caney Independent School District (the *Issuer*). The Bonds are issuable in fully registered form only, generally in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (within a Stated Maturity). The Bonds have Stated Maturities of February 15 in each of the years 2024 through 2039, unless redeemed prior to Stated Maturity in accordance with the terms stated on the face of the Bonds. Interest on the Bonds accrues from the dates, at the rates, in the manner, and is payable on the dates, all as provided in the order (the *Order*) authorizing the issuance of the Bonds. Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Order.

WE HAVE SERVED AS BOND COUNSEL for the Issuer solely to pass upon the legality and validity of the issuance of the Bonds under the laws of the State of Texas, the defeasance and discharge of the Issuer’s obligations being refunded by the Bonds, and with respect to the exclusion of the interest on the Bonds from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes and for no other purpose. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer. We have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the sufficiency of the security for or the marketability of the Bonds. Our role in connection with the Issuer’s Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

WE HAVE EXAMINED the applicable and pertinent laws of the State of Texas and the United States of America. In rendering the opinions herein we rely upon (1) original or certified copies of the proceedings of the Board of Trustees of the Issuer in connection with the issuance of the Bonds, including the Order, the Escrow and Trust Agreement (the *Escrow Agreement*) between the Issuer and BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the *Escrow Agent*), and a special report (the *Report*) of Public Finance Partners LLC (the *Verification Agent*), concerning the sufficiency of the cash and investments deposited with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement; (2) customary certifications and opinions of officials of the Issuer; (3) certificates executed by officers of the Issuer relating to the expected use and investment of proceeds of the Bonds and certain other funds of the Issuer, and to certain other facts solely within the knowledge and control of the Issuer; and (4) such other documentation, including an examination of the Bonds executed and delivered initially by the Issuer, and such matters of law as we deem relevant to the matters discussed below. In such examination, we have assumed the authenticity of all documents submitted to us

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP is a limited liability partnership registered under the laws of Texas.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright Australia, Norton Rose Fulbright Canada LLP and Norton Rose Fulbright South Africa Inc are separate legal entities and all of them are members of Norton Rose Fulbright Verein, a Swiss verein. Norton Rose Fulbright Verein helps coordinate the activities of the members but does not itself provide legal services to clients. Details of each entity, with certain regulatory information, are available at [nortonrosefulbright.com](http://nortonrosefulbright.com).

**Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of NEW CANEY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

as originals, the conformity to original copies of all documents submitted to us as certified copies, and the accuracy of the statements and information contained in such certificates. We express no opinion concerning any effect on the following opinions which may result from changes in law effected after the date hereof.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION that the Escrow has been duly authorized, executed, and delivered by the Issuer and, assuming due authorization, execution, and delivery thereof by the Escrow Agent, is a valid and binding obligation, enforceable in accordance with its terms (except to the extent that the enforceability thereof may be affected by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights or the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with general principles of equity), and that the outstanding obligations refunded, discharged, paid, and retired with certain proceeds of the Bonds have been defeased and are regarded as being outstanding only for the purpose of receiving payment from the funds held in trust with the Escrow Agent, pursuant to the Escrow Agreement and the orders authorizing their issuance, and in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 1207, as amended, Texas Government Code. In rendering this opinion, we have relied upon the Report of the Verification Agent concerning the sufficiency of the cash and investments deposited with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement for the purposes of paying the outstanding obligations refunded and to be retired with the proceeds of the Bonds and the interest thereon.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION that the Bonds have been duly authorized and issued in conformity with the laws of the State of Texas now in force and that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer enforceable in accordance with the terms and conditions described therein, except to the extent that the enforceability thereof may be affected by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights or the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with general principles of equity. The Bonds are payable from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the Issuer.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION that, assuming continuing compliance after the date hereof by the Issuer with the provisions of the Order and in reliance upon the Report of the Verification Agent concerning the sufficiency of the cash and investments deposited with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement and upon the representations and certifications of the Issuer made in a certificate of even date herewith pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds, under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) interest on the Bonds will be excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the *Code*), of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, pursuant to section 103 of the Code, and (2) interest on the Bonds will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof.

WE EXPRESS NO OTHER OPINION with respect to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences under present law or any proposed legislation resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust, individual

**Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of NEW CANEY INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement Benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED on existing law, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP

(this page intentionally left blank)

**APPENDIX D**

**AUDITED FINANCIAL REPORT  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018**

(this page intentionally left blank)

# **New Caney Independent School District**

Annual Financial Report

For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**



**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Annual Financial Report  
 For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018  
 Table of Contents

	Page	Exhibit
Certificate of the Board .....	iii	
<b>Financial Section</b>		
Independent Auditor’s Report .....	3	
Management’s Discussion and Analysis .....	7	
<b>Basic Financial Statements</b>		
Government-wide Financial Statements		
Statement of Net Position .....	16	A-1
Statement of Activities .....	17	B-1
Fund Financial Statements		
Balance Sheet – Governmental Funds .....	18	C-1
Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds Balance Sheet to the Statement of Net Position .....	21	C-1R
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances – Governmental Funds.....	22	C-2
Reconciliation of the Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances of Governmental Funds to the Statement of Activities .....	24	C-3
Statement of Assets and Liabilities - Fiduciary Fund .....	25	E-1
Notes to the Financial Statements .....	27	
<b>Required Supplementary Information</b>		
Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance – Budget and Actual – General Fund .....	56	G-1
Schedule of the District’s Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability of a Cost-Sharing Multiple-Employer Pension Plan Teacher Retirement System of Texas .....	57	G-2
Schedule of the District’s Contributions to the Teacher Retirement System of Texas Pension Plan.....	58	G-3
Schedule of the District’s Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability of a Cost-Sharing Multiple-Employer OPEB Plan Teacher Retirement System of Texas .....	59	G-4
Schedule of the District’s Contributions to the Teacher Retirement System of Texas OPEB Plan.....	60	G-5
Notes to the Required Supplementary Information .....	61	

**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Annual Financial Report  
 For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018  
 Table of Contents - Continued

	Page	Exhibit
<b>Supplementary Information</b>		
Combining Funds Financial Statements		
Combining Balance Sheet – Non-major Governmental Funds – Special Revenue Funds .....	64	H-1
Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes In Fund Balances – Non-major Governmental Funds – Special Revenue Funds .....	74	H-2
Compliance Schedules		
Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable .....	84	J-1
Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance – Budget and Actual – National School Breakfast and Lunch Program .....	86	J-2
Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance – Budget and Actual – Debt Service Fund .....	87	J-3
 <b>Overall Compliance, Internal Control Section and Federal Awards</b>		
Independent Auditor’s Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with <i>Government Auditing Standards</i> .....	91	
Independent Auditor’s Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program and Report on Internal Control over Compliance in Accordance with the Uniform Guidance .....	93	
Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs .....	95	
Summary Schedule of Prior Audit Findings.....	96	
Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards .....	97	K-1
Notes to Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards .....	99	
 <b>Other Information</b>		
Schedule of Required Responses to Selected School FIRST Indicators (Unaudited) .....	100	L-1

Certificate of the Board

New Caney Independent School District  
Name of School District

Montgomery  
County

170-908  
Co.-Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above named school district were reviewed and 7 approved 0 disapproved for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018 at a meeting of the Board of Trustees of such school district on the 21 day of January, 2019.

Elizabeth R Hanceel  
Signature of Board Secretary

[Signature]  
Signature of Board President

If the Board of Trustees disapproved the auditor's report, the reason(s) for disapproving it is/are (attach list as necessary):

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**

# Financial Section

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**



Austin | Conroe | Dallas | Fort Worth | Houston  
Los Angeles | Midland | New York City | San Antonio

## Independent Auditor's Report

To the Board of Trustees of  
New Caney Independent School District  
New Caney, Texas

### Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund and the aggregate remaining fund information of New Caney Independent School District (the District), as of and for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018 and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

### *Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements*

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

### *Auditor's Responsibility*

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

### ***Opinions***

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, each major fund and the aggregate remaining fund information of the District, as of August 31, 2018 and the respective changes in financial position for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

### ***Emphasis of Matter***

As discussed in Note 1.E. to the basic financial statements, during the year ended August 31, 2018, the District implemented Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) Statement No. 75, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions*. Beginning net position has been restated as a result of the implementation of this statement. Our opinion is not modified with respect to this matter.

### ***Other Matters***

#### *Required Supplementary Information*

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the Management's Discussion and Analysis and the Required Supplementary Information, as listed in the table of contents, be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

#### *Supplementary and Other Information*

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements. The Supplementary Information and Schedule of Required Responses to Selected School FIRST Indicators as listed in the table of contents, are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements. The Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards, as required by the audit requirements of Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (Uniform Guidance), is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The Supplementary Information and the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the Supplementary Information and the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards are fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.



The Board of Trustees of  
New Caney Independent School District

The Schedule of Required Responses to Selected School FIRST Indicators has not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on it.

**Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards***

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated January 14, 2019 on our consideration of the District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

*Weaver and Tidwell, L.L.P.*

WEAVER AND TIDWELL, L.L.P.

Conroe, Texas  
January 14, 2019

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**

## Management's Discussion and Analysis

As management of the New Caney Independent School District (the District), we offer readers of the District's financial statements this narrative overview and analysis of the financial activities of the District for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018.

### Financial Highlights

- The liabilities and deferred inflows of resources of the District exceeded its assets and deferred outflows of resources at the close of the most recent fiscal year by \$(70,103,616) (*net position*).
- The District's total net position increased by \$16,204,715 from current operations.
- As of the close of the current fiscal year, the District's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of \$117,802,416, an increase of \$6,440,791 in comparison with the prior year.
- At the end of the current fiscal year, unassigned fund balance for the general fund was \$28,408,141, or 21 percent of total general fund expenditures.
- The District's total bonded debt increased by \$52,659,761 (12 percent) during the current fiscal year. The key factor in this increase was the issuance of capital and refunding bonds.

### Overview of the Financial Statements

This discussion and analysis is intended to serve as an introduction to the District's basic financial statements. The District's basic financial statements comprise three components: 1) government-wide financial statements, 2) fund financial statements and 3) notes to the financial statements. This report also contains required supplementary information and supplementary and other information in addition to the basic financial statements themselves.

***Government-wide Financial Statements.*** The *government-wide financial statements* are designed to provide readers with a broad overview of the District's finances, in a manner similar to a private-sector business.

The *Statement of Net Position* presents information on all of the District's assets, liabilities and deferred inflows/outflows of resources, with the difference reported as *net position*. Over time, increases or decreases in net position may serve as a useful indicator of whether the financial position of the District is improving or deteriorating.

The *Statement of Activities* presents information showing how the District's net position changed during the most recent fiscal year. All changes in net position are reported as soon as the underlying event giving rise to the change occurs, *regardless of the timing of related cash flows*. Thus, revenues and expenses are reported in this statement for some items that will only result in cash flows in future fiscal periods (e.g., uncollected taxes).

The government-wide financial statements of the District are principally supported by taxes and intergovernmental revenues (*governmental activities*). The governmental activities of the District include *Instruction, Instructional Resources and Media Services, Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development, Instructional Leadership, School Leadership, Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services, Social Work Services, Health Services, Student Transportation, Food Services, Extracurricular Activities, General Administration, Plant Maintenance and Operations, Security and Monitoring Services, Data Processing Services, Community Services, Interest on Long-term Debt, Issuance Costs and Fees, Facilities Repair and Maintenance, Payments Related to Shared Services Arrangements, Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Education Programs and Other Intergovernmental Charges, as applicable.*

The government-wide financial statements can be found as noted in the table of contents of this report.

In fiscal year 2018, the District implemented the Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 75, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions* – which superseded GASB Statement No. 45.

Statement No. 75 establishes financial reporting standards and/or accounting standards for state and local government defined benefit other postemployment benefit (OPEB) plans and defined contribution OPEB plans. Statement No. 75 requires that, at transition, a government recognizes a beginning OPEB liability and beginning deferred outflow of resources for its OPEB contributions, if any, made subsequent to the measurement date of the beginning net OPEB liability. The implementation of this statement has no impact on the District's governmental fund financial statements. However, implementation has resulted in certain changes to the presentation of the District's government-wide financial statements. More information on the implementation of this statement and the District's OPEB plan is available in **Note 1. E. and Note 4.D.**, respectively.

**Fund Financial Statements.** A *fund* is a grouping of related accounts that is used to maintain control over resources that have been segregated for specific activities or objectives. The District, like other state and local governments, uses fund accounting to ensure and demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal requirements. All of the funds of the District can be divided into two categories: governmental funds and fiduciary funds.

**Governmental Funds.** *Governmental funds* are used to account for essentially the same functions reported as *governmental activities* in the government-wide financial statements. However, unlike the government-wide financial statements, governmental fund financial statements focus on *near-term inflows and outflows of spendable resources*, as well as on *balances of spendable resources* available at the end of the fiscal year. Such information may be useful in evaluating a District's near-term financing requirements.

Because the focus of governmental funds is narrower than that of the government-wide financial statements, it is useful to compare the information presented for *governmental funds* with similar information presented for *governmental activities* in the government-wide financial statements. By doing so, readers may better understand the long-term impact of the District's near-term financing decisions. Both the governmental fund balance sheet and the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures and changes in fund balances provide a reconciliation to facilitate this comparison between *governmental funds* and *governmental activities*.

The District maintains 42 individual governmental funds. Information is presented separately in the governmental fund balance sheet and in the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures and changes in fund balances for the general fund, debt service fund and the capital projects fund, all of which are considered to be major funds. Data from the other 34 governmental funds are combined into a single, aggregated presentation.

The District adopts an annual revenue and appropriations budget for its general fund, debt service fund and national school breakfast and lunch program special revenue fund. All other governmental funds adopt project length budgets. Subsequent to adoption, amendments approved by the governing body are reflected in a revised budget column. A budgetary comparison statement has been provided for the general fund and national school breakfast and lunch program special revenue fund to demonstrate compliance with its budget.

The basic governmental fund financial statements can be found as noted in the table of contents of this report.

***Fiduciary Funds.*** Fiduciary funds are used to account for resources held for the benefit of students. Fiduciary funds are *not* reflected in the government-wide financial statement because the resources of those funds are *not* available to support the District's own programs. The funds are custodial in nature (assets equal liabilities) and do not involve measurement of results of operations.

The basic fiduciary fund financial statements can be found as noted in the table of contents of this report.

***Notes to the Basic Financial Statements.*** The notes provide additional information that is essential to a full understanding of the data provided in the government-wide and fund financial statements. The notes to the financial statements can be found as noted in the table of contents of this report.

***Other Information.*** In addition to the basic financial statements and accompanying notes, this report also presents required supplementary information and supplementary and other information, including schedules required by the Texas Education Agency. Such information can be found as noted in the table of contents of this report.

## Government-wide Financial Analysis

As noted earlier, net position may serve over time as a useful indicator of a District's financial position. In the case of the District, liabilities and deferred inflows of resources exceeded assets and deferred outflows of resources by \$(70,103,616) at the close of the most recent fiscal year.

### New Caney Independent School District's Net Position

	Governmental Activities					
	2018		2017		Increase (Decrease)	
	Amount	%	Amount	%	Amount	%
Current and other assets	\$ 142,226,792	27	\$ 128,806,017	27	\$ 13,420,775	10
Capital assets	389,871,706	73	345,129,124	73	44,742,582	13
Total assets	532,098,498	100	473,935,141	100	58,163,357	
Total deferred outflows of resources	20,406,410	100	19,722,295	100	684,115	3
Other liabilities	22,636,323	4	15,526,299	3	7,110,024	46
Long-term liabilities outstanding	574,623,287	96	475,305,372	97	99,317,915	21
Total liabilities	597,259,610	100	490,831,671	100	106,427,939	
Total deferred inflows of resources	25,348,914	100	1,888,616	100	23,460,298	1,242
Net position:						
Net investment in capital assets	(13,527,341)	20	(8,079,032)	(862)	(5,448,309)	67
Restricted	4,047,377	(6)	3,685,946	393	361,431	10
Unrestricted	(60,623,652)	86	5,330,235	569	(65,953,887)	(1,237)
<b>Total net position</b>	<b>\$ (70,103,616)</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>\$ 937,149</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>\$ (71,040,765)</b>	

Net investment in capital assets includes land and improvements, buildings and improvements, furniture and equipment and construction in progress, less any related debt used to acquire those assets that are still outstanding. The District uses these capital assets to provide services to students; consequently, these assets are *not* available for future spending. Although the District's investment in its capital assets is reported net of related debt, it should be noted that the resources needed to repay this debt must be provided from other sources, since the capital assets themselves cannot be used to liquidate these liabilities. At the end of the current fiscal year, the District reports a negative balance in Net Investment in Capital Assets which is attributed to expenditure of bond proceeds not meeting the criteria for capitalization.

Net position that is restricted for debt service and grants total \$4,047,377, or (6) percent of total net position.

**Governmental Activities.** Governmental activities increased the District's net position by \$16,204,715 from current operations. The elements giving rise to this change may be determined from the table below.

**New Caney Independent School District's Changes in Net Position**

	Governmental Activities					
	2018		2017		Increase (Decrease)	
	Amount	%	Amount	%	Amount	%
Revenue:						
Program revenues:						
Charges for services	\$ 4,027,444	3	\$ 4,009,811	2	\$ 17,633	-
Operating grants and contributions	211,669	-	26,732,661	16	(26,520,992)	(99)
General revenues:						
Property taxes, levied for general purpose	45,063,546	28	41,507,554	24	3,555,992	9
Property taxes, levied for debt service	19,253,710	12	17,796,195	10	1,457,515	8
Grants and contributions not restricted to specific programs	88,959,633	56	78,232,506	47	10,727,127	14
Investment earnings	1,640,140	1	920,017	1	720,123	78
Miscellaneous	166,543	-	338,504	-	(171,961)	(51)
<b>Total revenues</b>	<b>159,322,685</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>169,537,248</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>(10,214,563)</b>	
Expenses:						
Instruction	64,335,886	45	86,466,944	50	(22,131,058)	(26)
Instructional resources and media services	1,331,328	1	1,308,095	1	23,233	2
Curriculum and instructional staff development	2,587,103	2	4,767,661	3	(2,180,558)	(46)
Instructional leadership	900,859	1	1,374,059	1	(473,200)	(34)
School leadership	6,096,219	4	8,783,603	5	(2,687,384)	(31)
Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	3,505,476	2	4,943,520	3	(1,438,044)	(29)
Social work services	1,572	-	16,562	-	(14,990)	(91)
Health services	937,139	1	1,252,532	1	(315,393)	(25)
Student transportation	6,123,511	4	6,818,771	4	(695,260)	(10)
Food services	6,821,256	5	8,419,371	5	(1,598,115)	(19)
Extracurricular activities	6,152,850	4	6,861,543	4	(708,693)	(10)
General administration	4,151,447	3	5,380,347	3	(1,228,900)	(23)
Plant maintenance and operations	12,683,183	9	13,101,947	8	(418,764)	(3)
Security and monitoring services	1,200,658	1	1,382,334	1	(181,676)	(13)
Data processing services	3,712,150	3	3,467,260	2	244,890	7
Community services	132,588	-	128,597	-	3,991	3
Interest on long-term debt	16,815,647	12	16,020,751	9	794,896	5
Issuance costs and fees	805,895	1	738,379	-	67,516	9
Facilities repair and maintenance	4,069,353	3	833,671	-	3,235,682	388
Payments related to shared services arrangements	154,000	-	154,000	-	-	-
Other intergovernmental charges	599,850	-	525,225	-	74,625	14
<b>Total expenses</b>	<b>143,117,970</b>	<b>101</b>	<b>172,745,172</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>(29,627,202)</b>	
<b>Change in net position</b>	<b>16,204,715</b>		<b>(3,207,924)</b>		<b>19,412,639</b>	
Net position - beginning	937,149		4,145,073		(3,207,924)	
Prior period adjustment - implement GASB 75 for OPEB (a)	(87,245,480)		-		(87,245,480)	
<b>Net position - beginning, as restated</b>	<b>(86,308,331)</b>		<b>4,145,073</b>		<b>(90,453,404)</b>	
<b>Net position - ending</b>	<b>\$ (70,103,616)</b>		<b>\$ 937,149</b>		<b>\$ (71,040,765)</b>	

(a) The restatement of the beginning net position is the result of the District implementing GASB Statement No. 75 in fiscal year 2018. The implementation is discussed previously in MD&A.

The increase in net position from current operations was primarily due to the decrease in expenditures across most functions, most notably Instruction, which results from recognizing negative OPEB expense of \$41,969,890.

Revenues are generated primarily from two sources. Grants and contributions (program and general revenues totaling \$89,171,302) represent 56 percent of total revenues and property taxes (\$64,317,256) represent 40 percent of total revenues. The remaining 4 percent is generated from investment earnings, charges for services and miscellaneous revenues.

The primary functional expenses of the District is instruction (\$64,335,886) which represents 45 percent of total expenses and interest on long-term debt (\$16,815,647) which represents 12 percent of total expenses. The remaining functional categories of expenses are individually 4 percent or less of total expenses.

### **Financial Analysis of the Government's Funds**

As noted earlier, the District uses fund accounting to ensure and demonstrate compliance with finance-related legal requirements.

**Governmental Funds.** The focus of the District's *governmental funds* is to provide information on near-term inflows, outflows and balances of *spendable* resources. Such information is useful in assessing the District's financing requirements. In particular, *unassigned fund balance* may serve as a useful measure of a District's net resources available for spending at the end of the fiscal year.

As of the end of the current fiscal year, the District's governmental funds reported combined ending fund balances of \$117,802,416, an increase of \$6,440,791 in comparison with the prior year.

The general fund is the chief operating fund of the District. At the end of the current fiscal year, unassigned fund balance of the general fund was \$28,408,101 and total fund balance was \$28,464,319. As a measure of the general fund's liquidity, it may be useful to compare unassigned and total fund balance to total fund expenditures. Unassigned and total fund balance represents 21 percent of total general fund expenditures. The fund balance of the District's general fund increased by \$5,007,807 during the current fiscal year. The fund balance of the general fund increased primarily due to an increase in state funding and property tax collections.

The debt service fund has a total fund balance of \$4,136,994, all of which is restricted for retirement of long-term debt. The net decrease in fund balance during the current year in the debt service fund was \$898,298. The decrease in fund balance was due primarily to an increase in current debt service requirements.

The capital projects fund has a total fund balance of \$83,035,617, all of which is restricted for capital acquisition programs and contractual obligations. The net increase in fund balance during the current year in the capital projects fund was \$1,878,891. The increase was due to proceeds from the issuance of capital and refunding bonds offset by capital expenditures.

### **General Fund Budgetary Highlights**

The District amended the budget several times throughout the year. There were no significant variations between the original and final budget.

There were no significant variations between the final budget and actual results.



## Capital Assets and Long-term Liabilities

**Capital Assets.** The District's investment in capital assets for its governmental-type activities as of August 31, 2018, amounts to \$389,871,706 (net of accumulated depreciation). This investment in capital assets includes land and improvements, buildings and improvements, furniture and equipment and construction in progress.

### New Caney Independent School District's Capital Assets (net of depreciation)

	Governmental Activities					
	2018		2017		Increase (Decrease)	
	Amount	%	Amount	%	Amount	%
Land and improvements	\$ 33,587,552	9	\$ 28,232,772	8	\$ 5,354,780	19
Buildings and improvements	318,049,199	82	277,203,767	80	40,845,432	15
Furniture and equipment	6,680,719	2	6,073,239	2	607,480	10
Construction in progress	31,554,236	8	33,619,346	10	(2,065,110)	(6)
<b>Totals</b>	<b>\$ 389,871,706</b>	<b>101</b>	<b>\$ 345,129,124</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>\$ 44,742,582</b>	

Major capital asset purchases during the current fiscal year included the following:

- \$49,101,369 construction and renovations for various campuses and facilities.
- \$5,354,780 land for facilities.
- \$1,238,054 vehicles and buses.

Additional information on the District's capital assets can be found in Note 3.D. in the notes to the financial statements as noted in the table of contents of this report.

**Construction Commitments.** At the end of the current fiscal year, the Districts commitments with construction contractors totaled \$4,716,283.

**Long-term Liabilities.** At year-end, the District had the following long-term liabilities:

### New Caney Independent School District's Long-term Liabilities Outstanding

	Governmental Activities					
	2018		2017		Increase (Decrease)	
	Amount	%	Amount	%	Amount	%
General obligation bonds (net)	\$ 495,209,932	86	\$ 442,550,171	93	\$ 52,659,761	12
Net pension liability	29,658,134	5	32,755,201	7	(3,097,067)	(9)
Net OPEB liability	49,755,221	9	87,840,330	-	(38,085,109)	(43)
<b>Totals</b>	<b>\$ 574,623,287</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>\$ 563,145,702</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>\$ 11,477,585</b>	

The District's bonded debt increased by \$52,659,761 (12 percent) during the current fiscal year. The key factor in this increase was the issuance of capital and refunding bonds.

The District's general obligation debt is backed by the full faith and credit of the District and is further guaranteed by the Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program.

State statutes do not limit the tax rate or amount for the support of school districts' bonded indebtedness. However, approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas is required prior to the sale of bonds.

Additional information on the District's long-term debt can be found in Note 3.E. in the notes to the financial statements as indicated in the table of contents of this report.

Additional information on the District's net pension liability can be found in Note 4.C. in the notes to the financial statements as indicated in the table of contents of this report.

Additional information on the District's OPEB liability can be found in Note 4.D. to the financial statements as indicated in the table of contents of this report.

### **Economic Factors and Next Year's Budgets and Rates**

- Current enrollment totals 15,386 students, which is an increase from the prior year.
- District staff totals 2,508 employees, which includes of 1,036 teachers and 270 teachers' aides and secretaries and 247 substitute employees.
- The District maintains 18 campuses for instruction and The Learning Center.
- The unemployment rate for the County is currently 3.8 percent, which is a decrease from a rate of 4.5 percent a year ago. This compares to the state's average unemployment rate of 3.9 percent, which is a decrease from a rate of 4.5 percent a year ago.
- Property values of the District are projected to increase for the 2018-2019 fiscal year.
- A maintenance and operations tax rate of \$1.17 and a debt service tax rate of \$.50, a total rate of \$1.67, were adopted for 2018-2019, which was the same as the previous year.

All of these factors were considered in preparing the District's budget for the 2018 fiscal year.

During the current fiscal year, fund balance in the general fund increased to \$28,464,319, which still exceed two months of annual operating expenditures.

### **Requests for Information**

This financial report is designed to provide a general overview of the District's finances for all those with an interest in the District's finances. Questions concerning any of the information provided in this report or requests for additional financial information should be addressed to the Executive Director of Finance, New Caney Independent School District, 21580 Loop 494, New Caney, Texas, 77357.

# Basic Financial Statements

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Statement of Net Position  
August 31, 2018

**Exhibit A-1**

<u>Data Control Codes</u>		<u>Primary Government Governmental Activities</u>
<b>ASSETS</b>		
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 8,012,808
1120	Current investments	123,955,991
1220	Property taxes receivables	2,707,183
1230	Allowance for uncollectible taxes	(54,000)
1240	Due from other governments	7,479,685
1290	Other receivables	6,867
1300	Inventories	118,258
	Capital assets:	
1510	Land and improvements	33,587,552
1520	Buildings and improvements (net)	318,049,199
1530	Furniture and equipment (net)	6,680,719
1580	Construction in progress	31,554,236
		<hr/>
1000	Total assets	532,098,498
<b>DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>		
1705	Deferred outflows - pension	12,553,151
1706	Deferred outflows - OPEB	775,794
1710	Deferred charge of refunding	7,077,465
		<hr/>
1700	Total deferred outflows of resources	20,406,410
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
2110	Accounts payable	12,764,081
2140	Interest payable	865,130
2150	Payroll deductions and withholdings	51,700
2160	Accrued wages payable	7,877,328
2180	Due to other governments	945,786
2190	Due to student groups	13,577
2300	Unearned revenue	118,721
	Noncurrent liabilities:	
2501	Due within one year	7,384,994
2502	Due in more than one year	487,824,938
2540	Net pension liabilities	29,658,134
2545	Net OPEB liabilities	49,755,221
		<hr/>
2000	Total liabilities	597,259,610
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>		
2605	Deferred inflows - pension	4,536,211
2606	Deferred inflows - OPEB	20,812,703
		<hr/>
2600	Total deferred inflows of resources	25,348,914
<b>NET POSITION</b>		
3200	Net investment in capital assets	(13,527,341)
3820	Restricted for grants	1,678,856
3850	Restricted for debt service	2,368,521
3900	Unrestricted	(60,623,652)
		<hr/>
3000	<b>TOTAL NET POSITION (DEFICIT)</b>	<b>\$ (70,103,616)</b>

The Notes to the Financial Statements are an integral part of this statement.

**New Caney Independent School District**  
**Statements of Activities**  
**For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018**

**Exhibit B-1**

Data Control Codes	Functions/Programs	1	3	4	Net (Expense) Revenue and Changes in Net Position
		Expenses	Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions	Governmental Activities
<b>PRIMARY GOVERNMENT:</b>					
Governmental activities:					
0011	Instruction	\$ 64,335,886	\$ 235,790	\$ (7,493,909)	\$ (71,594,005)
0012	Instructional resources and media services	1,331,328	131,901	(109,678)	(1,309,105)
0013	Curriculum and instructional staff development	2,587,103	9,436	818,137	(1,759,530)
0021	Instructional leadership	900,859	-	(233,194)	(1,134,053)
0023	School leadership	6,096,219	238,486	(1,356,189)	(7,213,922)
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	3,505,476	1,577	(329,346)	(3,833,245)
0032	Social work services	1,572	-	2,586	1,014
0033	Health services	937,139	46	(206,789)	(1,143,882)
0034	Student transportation	6,123,511	45,491	(549,313)	(6,627,333)
0035	Food services	6,821,256	2,229,060	5,750,238	1,158,042
0036	Extracurricular activities	6,152,850	1,128,209	(596,221)	(5,620,862)
0041	General administration	4,151,447	-	(547,554)	(4,699,001)
0051	Plant maintenance and operations	12,683,183	-	(758,405)	(13,441,588)
0052	Security and monitoring services	1,200,658	7,448	(120,654)	(1,313,864)
0053	Data processing services	3,712,150	-	(252,179)	(3,964,329)
0061	Community services	132,588	-	132,972	384
0072	Interest on long-term debt	16,815,647	-	5,987,382	(10,828,265)
0073	Issuance costs and fees	805,895	-	-	(805,895)
0081	Facilities repair and maintenance	4,069,353	-	(80,215)	(4,149,568)
0093	Payments related to shared services arrangements	154,000	-	154,000	-
0099	Other intergovernmental charges	599,850	-	-	(599,850)
TG	Total governmental activities	<u>143,117,970</u>	<u>4,027,444</u>	<u>211,669</u>	<u>(138,878,857)</u>
TP	<b>TOTAL PRIMARY GOVERNMENT</b>	<u>\$ 143,117,970</u>	<u>\$ 4,027,444</u>	<u>\$ 211,669</u>	<u>(138,878,857)</u>
General revenues:					
MT	Property taxes, levied for general purposes				45,063,546
DT	Property taxes, levied for debt services				19,253,710
GC	Grants and contributions not restricted to specific programs				88,959,633
IE	Investment earnings				1,640,140
MI	Miscellaneous				166,543
TR	Total general revenues				<u>155,083,572</u>
CN	Change in net position				16,204,715
NB	Net position - beginning				937,149
PA	Prior period adjustment - implement GASB 75 for OPEB				<u>(87,245,480)</u>
	Net position (deficit) - beginning, as restated				<u>(86,308,331)</u>
NE	<b>NET POSITION (DEFICIT) - ENDING</b>				<u>\$ (70,103,616)</u>

The Notes to the Financial Statements are an integral part of this statement.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Balance Sheet – Governmental Funds

August 31, 2018

Data Control Codes		199	599
		General Fund	Debt Service Fund
<b>ASSETS</b>			
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 5,636,763	\$ 1,046,261
1120	Current investments	27,189,506	3,980,137
1220	Property taxes receivable	1,896,723	810,460
1230	Allowance for uncollectible taxes	(38,000)	(16,000)
1240	Due from other governments	5,062,795	-
1260	Due from other funds	1,829,313	56,382
1290	Other receivables	6,867	-
1300	Inventories	19,338	-
1000	Total assets	<u>41,603,305</u>	<u>5,877,240</u>
1000a	<b>TOTAL ASSETS AND DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	<u><u>\$ 41,603,305</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 5,877,240</u></u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>			
2110	Accounts payable	\$ 3,740,866	\$ -
2150	Payroll deductions and withholdings	51,700	-
2160	Accrued wages payable	7,417,738	-
2170	Due to other funds	56,382	-
2180	Due to other governments	-	945,786
2190	Due to student groups	13,577	-
2300	Unearned revenue	-	-
2000	Total liabilities	<u>11,280,263</u>	<u>945,786</u>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>			
2600	Unavailable revenue - property taxes	<u>1,858,723</u>	<u>794,460</u>
	Total deferred inflows of resources	1,858,723	794,460
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>			
3410	Nonspendable - inventories	19,338	-
3450	Restricted - grant funds	-	-
3470	Restricted - capital acquisitions and contractual obligations	-	-
3480	Restricted - debt service	-	4,136,994
3545	Committed - other	-	-
3570	Assigned - capital expenditures	36,840	-
3600	Unassigned	<u>28,408,141</u>	<u>-</u>
3000	Total fund balances	<u>28,464,319</u>	<u>4,136,994</u>
4000	<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES, DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES, AND FUND BALANCES</b>	<u><u>\$ 41,603,305</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 5,877,240</u></u>

The Notes to the Financial Statements are an integral part of this statement.

699		98
Capital Projects Funds	Total Nonmajor Funds	Total Governmental Funds
\$ -	\$ 1,329,784	\$ 8,012,808
92,080,843	705,505	123,955,991
-	-	2,707,183
-	-	(54,000)
-	2,416,890	7,479,685
-	-	1,885,695
-	-	6,867
-	98,920	118,258
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
92,080,843	4,551,099	144,112,487
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<u>\$ 92,080,843</u>	<u>\$ 4,551,099</u>	<u>\$ 144,112,487</u>
\$ 9,023,215	\$ -	\$ 12,764,081
-	-	51,700
19,870	439,720	7,877,328
2,141	1,827,172	1,885,695
-	-	945,786
-	-	13,577
-	118,721	118,721
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
9,045,226	2,385,613	23,656,888
-	-	2,653,183
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
-	-	2,653,183
-	-	19,338
-	1,678,856	1,678,856
83,035,617	-	83,035,617
-	-	4,136,994
-	486,630	486,630
-	-	36,840
-	-	28,408,141
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
83,035,617	2,165,486	117,802,416
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<u>\$ 92,080,843</u>	<u>\$ 4,551,099</u>	<u>\$ 144,112,487</u>

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**



**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds Balance Sheet  
 to the Statement of Net Position  
 August 31, 2018

**Exhibit C1-R**

**TOTAL FUND BALANCES - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS (EXHIBIT C-1)** \$ 117,802,416

Amounts reported for governmental activities in the statement of net position are different because:

Capital assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and, therefore, are not reported as assets in governmental funds. The governmental capital assets at year-end consist of:

Governmental capital assets costs	\$ 511,501,897	
Accumulated depreciation of governmental capital assets	(121,630,191)	389,871,706

Property taxes receivable, which will be collected subsequent to year-end, but are not available soon enough to pay expenditures and, therefore, are deferred in the funds. 2,653,183

Long-term liabilities, including bonds payable and net pension and OPEB liability, are not due and payable in the current period and, therefore, are not reported as liabilities in the funds. Liabilities at year end related to such items, consist of:

Bonds payable, at original par	\$ (461,040,352)	
Premium on bonds payable	(32,574,623)	
Discount on bonds payable	102,846	
Accreted interest	(1,697,803)	
Accrued interest on the bonds	(865,130)	
Net pension liability	(29,658,134)	
Net OPEB liability	(49,755,221)	(575,488,417)

Deferred charge on refunding is reported as deferred outflow in the statement of net position and is not reported in the funds due to it is not a current financial resource available to pay for current expenditures. 7,077,465

Deferred outflows of resources for pension represents a consumption of net position that applies to a future period(s) and will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expenses/expenditures) until then. 12,553,151

Deferred inflows of resources for pension represents an acquisition of net position that applies to a future period(s) and will not be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time. (4,536,211)

Deferred outflows of resources for OPEB represents a consumption of net position that applies to a future period(s) and will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expenses/expenditures) until then. 775,794

Deferred inflows of resources for OPEB represents an acquisition of net position that applies to a future period(s) and will not be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time. (20,812,703)

**TOTAL NET POSITION (DEFICIT) - GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES (EXHIBIT A-1)** \$ (70,103,616)

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes  
in Fund Balances – Governmental Funds  
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

Data Control Codes		199	599
		General Fund	Debt Service Fund
<b>REVENUES</b>			
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ 46,597,239	\$ 19,498,309
5800	State program revenues	93,946,630	5,987,382
5900	Federal program revenues	1,350,165	-
5020	Total revenues	141,894,034	25,485,691
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>			
Current:			
0011	Instruction	77,483,725	-
0012	Instructional resources and media services	1,286,262	-
0013	Curriculum and instructional staff development	2,420,634	-
0021	Instructional leadership	1,390,739	-
0023	School leadership	8,652,562	-
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	4,747,810	-
0032	Social work services	-	-
0033	Health services	1,346,916	-
0034	Student transportation	7,802,699	-
0035	Food services	-	-
0036	Extracurricular activities	5,747,139	-
0041	General administration	5,374,283	-
0051	Plant maintenance and operations	14,417,718	-
0052	Security and monitoring services	1,448,408	-
0053	Data processing services	4,154,452	-
0061	Community services	13,030	-
Debt service:			
0071	Principal on long-term debt	-	7,678,410
0072	Interest on long-term debt	-	18,700,409
0073	Issuance costs and fees	-	351,594
Capital outlay:			
0081	Facilities acquisition and construction	-	-
Intergovernmental:			
0093	Payments related to shared services arrangements	-	-
0099	Other intergovernmental charges	599,850	-
6030	Total expenditures	136,886,227	26,730,413
1100	Excess (deficiency) of revenues over (under) expenditures	5,007,807	(1,244,722)
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)</b>			
7901	Issuance of refunding bonds	-	28,550,000
7911	Issuance of capital-related bonds	-	-
7916	Premium or discount on issuance of bonds	-	3,711,256
8940	Payment to bond refunding escrow agent	-	(31,914,832)
7080	Total other financing sources (uses)	-	346,424
1200	Net change in fund balances	5,007,807	(898,298)
0100	Fund balances - beginning	23,456,512	5,035,292
3000	<b>FUND BALANCES - ENDING</b>	<b>\$ 28,464,319</b>	<b>\$ 4,136,994</b>

The Notes to the Financial Statements are an integral part of this statement.

699	Total	98
Capital Projects Funds	Nonmajor Funds	Total Governmental Funds
\$ 905,357	\$ 3,408,276	\$ 70,409,181
24,334	1,793,616	101,751,962
-	13,940,681	15,290,846
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
929,691	19,142,573	187,451,989
-	6,412,954	83,896,679
-	138,793	1,425,055
-	1,567,340	3,987,974
-	2,743	1,393,482
-	270,247	8,922,809
-	585,483	5,333,293
-	3,943	3,943
-	50	1,346,966
-	13,950	7,816,649
-	8,942,484	8,942,484
-	392,617	6,139,756
-	47,814	5,422,097
-	-	14,417,718
-	6,852	1,455,260
-	-	4,154,452
-	150,912	163,942
-	-	7,678,410
-	-	18,700,409
454,301	-	805,895
59,050,799	-	59,050,799
-	154,000	154,000
-	-	599,850
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
59,505,100	18,690,182	241,811,922
(58,575,409)	452,391	(54,359,933)
-	-	28,550,000
59,015,000	-	59,015,000
1,439,300	-	5,150,556
-	-	(31,914,832)
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
60,454,300	-	60,800,724
1,878,891	452,391	6,440,791
81,156,726	1,713,095	111,361,625
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
\$ 83,035,617	\$ 2,165,486	\$ 117,802,416

**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Reconciliation of the Statement of Revenues,  
 Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances of  
 Governmental Funds to the Statement of Activities  
 For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

**Exhibit C-3**

**TOTAL NET CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES - GOVERNMENTAL (EXHIBIT C-2)** \$ 6,440,791

Amounts reported for governmental activities in the statement of activities are different because:

Capital outlays are reported in governmental funds as expenditures. However, in the statement of activities, the cost of those assets is allocated over their estimated useful lives as depreciation expense.

Capital assets increased	\$ 57,066,410	
Depreciation expense	(12,323,828)	44,742,582

Because some property taxes will not be collected for several months after the District's fiscal year end, they are not considered "available" revenues and are deferred in the governmental funds. Deferred tax revenues increased (decreased) by this amount this year. (62,010)

Issuance of bonds provides current financial resources to governmental funds, but issuing debt increases long-term liabilities in the statement of net position.

Par value	\$ (87,565,000)	
(Premium) discount	(5,150,556)	(92,715,556)

Repayment of bond principal is an expenditure in the governmental funds, but the repayment reduces long-term liabilities in the statement of net position. 7,678,410

Payment to escrow agent to refund bonds from refunding proceeds. 31,914,832

Interest on long-term debt in the statement of activities differs from the amount reported in the governmental funds because interest is recognized as an expenditure in the funds when it is due, and thus requires the use of current financial resources. In the statement of activities, however, interest expense is recognized as the interest accrues, regardless of when it is due, and includes amortization of related long-term debt accounts. The increase (decrease) in interest expense reported in the statement of activities consist of the following:

Accrued interest on current interest bonds payable (increased) decreased	\$ (68,030)	
Interest accreted on the capital appreciation bonds	(136,330)	
Accreted interest paid	1,036,590	
Amortization of bond premium and discount	1,475,005	
Amortization of deferred charge on refunding	(422,473)	1,884,762

The net change in net pension liability, deferred outflows, and deferred inflows is reported in the statement of activities but does not require the use of current financial resources and, therefore, is not reported as expenditures in the governmental funds. The net change consists of the following:

Deferred outflows increased (decreased)	\$ (1,581,918)	
Deferred inflows (increased) decreased	(2,647,595)	
Net pension liability (increased) decreased	3,097,067	(1,132,446)

The net change in net OPEB liability, deferred outflows, and deferred inflows is reported in the statement of activities but does not require the use of current financial resources and, therefore, is not reported as expenditures in the governmental funds. The net change consists of the following:

Deferred outflows increased (decreased)	\$ 180,944	
Deferred inflows (increased) decreased	(20,812,703)	
Net OPEB liability (increased) decreased	38,085,109	17,453,350

**CHANGE IN NET POSITION - GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES (EXHIBIT B-1)** \$ 16,204,715

The Notes to the Financial Statements are an integral part of this statement.

**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Statement of Assets and Liabilities  
 Fiduciary Fund  
 August 31, 2018

**Exhibit E-1**

<u>Data Control Codes</u>		<u>Agency Fund Student Activity</u>
	<b>ASSETS</b>	
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 396,559
1000	<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>\$ 396,559</u>
	<b>LIABILITIES</b>	
2190	Due to student groups	\$ 396,559
2000	<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>	<u>\$ 396,559</u>

The Notes to the Financial Statements are an integral part of this statement.

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Note 1. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

#### A. Description of Government-wide Financial Statements

The government-wide financial statements (i.e., the statement of net position and the statement of activities) report information on all of the non-fiduciary activities of the District. All fiduciary activities are reported only in the fund financial statements. *Governmental activities* normally are supported by taxes, intergovernmental revenues and other nonexchange transactions.

#### B. Reporting Entity

The District is governed by a seven-member board of trustees (the Board), which has governance responsibilities over all activities related to public elementary and secondary, education within the District. Members of the Board are elected by the public; have authority to make decisions; appoint management and significantly influence operations; and have primary accountability for fiscal matters; the District is not included in any other governmental reporting entity.

#### C. Basis of Presentation – Government-wide Financial Statements

While separate government-wide and fund financial statements are presented, they are interrelated. The governmental activities column incorporates data from governmental funds. Separate financial statements are provided for governmental funds and fiduciary funds, even though the latter are excluded from the government-wide financial statements.

As a general rule, the effect of interfund activity has been eliminated from the government-wide financial statements.

#### D. Basis of Presentation – Fund Financial Statements

The fund financial statements provide information about the District's funds, including its fiduciary funds. Separate statements for each fund category—governmental and fiduciary—are presented. The emphasis of fund financial statements is on major governmental funds, each displayed in a separate column. All remaining governmental funds are aggregated and reported as non-major funds.

The District reports the following major governmental funds:

The *general fund* is the District's primary operating fund. It accounts for all financial resources of the District, except those accounted for in another fund.

The *debt service fund* is used to account for the accumulation of resources that are restricted, committed, or assigned for the payment of principal and interest on long-term obligations of governmental funds.

The *capital projects fund* accounts for the acquisition and construction of the District's major capital facilities, other than those financed by proprietary funds.

Additionally, the District reports the following fund types:

The *agency fund* accounts for assets held by the District for student organizations. The fund is custodial in nature (assets equal liabilities) and does not involve measurement or results of operations.

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

During the course of operations, the District has activity between funds for various purposes. Any residual balances outstanding at year end are reported as due from/to other funds and advances to/from other funds. While these balances are reported in fund financial statements, certain eliminations are made in the preparation of the government-wide financial statements. Balances between the funds included in governmental activities (i.e., the governmental funds) are eliminated.

Further, certain activity occurs during the year involving transfers of resources between funds. In fund financial statements these amounts are reported at gross amounts as transfers in/out. While reported in fund financial statements, certain eliminations are made in the preparation of the government-wide financial statements. Transfers between the funds are eliminated in governmental activities.

#### **E. Change in Accounting Principle**

In fiscal year 2018, the District implemented Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 75, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions* – which supersedes GASB Statement No. 45.

The requirements of Statement No. 75 apply to the financial statements of all state and local government employers whose employees are provided postemployment benefits other than pensions (other postemployment benefits or OPEB). This Statement establishes standards for measuring and recognizing liabilities, deferred outflows of resources, and deferred inflows of resources, and expense related to the OPEB plan. Note disclosure and required supplementary information requirements about the OPEB plan also are addressed. The implementation of Statement No. 75 has no impact on the District's governmental fund financial statements, which continue to report expenditures in the contribution amount determined legislatively. Refer to Note 4.D. for more information regarding the District's OPEB plan. The implementation of Statement No. 75 resulted in the retroactive restatement of the District's beginning net position by \$87,245,480. See Note 4.G. for details of the District's prior period adjustment and restatement of beginning net position.

#### **F. Measurement Focus and Basis of Accounting**

The accounting and financial reporting treatment is determined by the applicable measurement focus and basis of accounting. Measurement focus indicates the type of resources being measured such as *current financial resources* or *economic resources*. The basis of accounting indicates the timing of transactions or events for recognition in the financial statements.

The government-wide financial statements are reported using the *economic resources measurement focus* and the *accrual basis of accounting*. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of related cash flows. Property taxes are recognized as revenues in the year for which they are levied. Grants and similar items are recognized as revenue as soon as all eligibility requirements imposed by the provider have been met.

The governmental fund financial statements are reported using the *current financial resources measurement focus* and the *modified accrual basis of accounting*. Revenues are recognized as soon as they are both measurable and available. Revenues are considered to be available when they are collectible within the current period or soon enough thereafter to pay liabilities of the current period. For this purpose, the District considers revenues to be available if they are collected within 60 days of the end of the current fiscal period. Expenditures generally are recorded when a liability is incurred, as required under accrual accounting. However, debt service expenditures and claims and judgments are recorded only when payment is due. General capital asset acquisitions are reported as expenditures in governmental funds. Issuance of long-term debt and acquisitions under capital leases are reported as other financing sources.



## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

Interest associated with the current fiscal period is considered to be susceptible to accrual and has been recognized as revenues of the current fiscal period. Entitlements are recorded as revenues when all eligibility requirements are met, including any time requirements and the amount is received during the period or within the availability period for this revenue source (within 60 days of year-end). Expenditure-driven grants are recognized as revenue when the qualifying expenditures have been incurred and all other eligibility requirements have been met and the amount is received during the period or within the availability period for this revenue source (within 60 days of year-end). All other revenue items, including property taxes, are considered to be measurable and available only when cash is received by the District.

The agency fund has no measurement focus but utilizes the accrual basis of accounting for reporting its assets and liabilities.

#### **G. Assets, Liabilities, Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources and Net Position/Fund Balance**

##### **1. Cash and Cash Equivalents**

The District's cash and cash equivalents are considered to be cash on hand and cash on deposit with bank depository.

##### **2. Investments**

Investments for the District, except for certain investment pools, are reported at fair value. The investment pools operate in accordance with appropriate state laws and regulations and are reported at amortized cost or fair value.

##### **3. Inventories and Prepaid Items**

Inventories are valued at cost using the first-in/first-out (FIFO) method and consist of expendable supplies. The cost of such inventories is recorded as expenditures/expenses when consumed rather than when purchased.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items in both the government-wide and fund financial statements. The cost of prepaid items is recorded as expenditures/expenses when consumed rather than when purchased.

##### **4. Capital Assets**

Capital assets, which include land and improvements, construction in progress, buildings and improvements and furniture and equipment, are reported in the applicable governmental activities column in the government-wide financial statements. The District's infrastructure includes parking lots and sidewalks associated with various buildings. The cost of the infrastructure was initially capitalized with the building cost and is being depreciated over the same useful life as the building. Capital assets are defined by the District as assets with an initial, individual cost of more than \$5,000 and an estimated useful life in excess of two years.

In the case of the initial capitalization of general infrastructure assets (i.e., those reported by governmental activities), the District chose to include all such items regardless of their acquisition date or amount. The District was able to estimate the historical cost for the initial reporting of these assets through back trending (i.e., estimating the current replacement cost of the infrastructure to be capitalized and using an appropriate price-level index to deflate the cost to the acquisition year or estimated acquisition year). As the District constructs or acquires additional capital assets each period, including infrastructure assets, they are capitalized and reported at historical cost. The reported value excludes normal maintenance and repairs which are essentially amounts spent in relation to capital assets that do not increase the capacity or efficiency of the item or increase its estimated useful life. Donated capital assets are recorded at their estimated acquisition value at the date of donation.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

Land and improvements and construction in progress are not depreciated. The buildings and improvements and furniture and equipment of the District are depreciated using the straight line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>Capital Asset Classes</u>	<u>Lives</u>
Buildings and improvements	5-47
Furniture and equipment	5-30

### 5. *Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources*

Deferred outflows of resources represents a consumption of net position that applies to a future period(s) and will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense/expenditures) until then. Deferred inflows of resources represents an acquisition of net position that applies to a future period(s) and will not be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time.

Deferred outflows/inflows of resources are amortized as follows:

- Deferred outflows/inflows from pension and OPEB activities are amortized over the weighted average remaining service life of all participants in the respective qualified pension plan and OPEB plan, except for projected and actual earnings differences on investments which are amortized on a closed basis over a 5-year period.
- District contributions to the pension and OPEB plans after the measurement date of each plan are recognized in the subsequent fiscal year.
- Deferred charge/gain on refunding is amortized over the shorter of the life of the refunded or refunding debt.
- Property taxes are recognized in the period the amount becomes available.

### 6. *Compensated Absences*

#### **Vacation**

The District does not have a liability for unpaid vacation at year end due to the District's policy does not allow a carryover of vacation not taken at August 31.

#### **Sick Leave**

Prior to September 1, 1992, the District's policy permitted employees to accumulate earned but unused sick leave benefits. Payment for unused sick leave days accumulated locally will be made upon retirement (in accordance with guidelines established by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas) for all employees hired prior to September 1, 1992. No liabilities were recorded due to the amounts were not significant. All sick pay is accrued when incurred in the government-wide financial statements. If significant, a liability for these amounts is reported in governmental funds only if they have met the District's retirement and State's retirement eligibility requirements.

### 7. *Net Position Flow Assumption*

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted (e.g., restricted bond or grant proceeds) and unrestricted resources. In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted – net position and unrestricted – net position in the government-wide financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied.

It is the District's policy to consider restricted – net position to have been depleted before unrestricted – net position is applied.

## **New Caney Independent School District**

### Notes to the Financial Statements

#### **8. Fund Balance Flow Assumptions**

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted and unrestricted resources (the total of committed, assigned and unassigned fund balance). In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted, committed, assigned and unassigned fund balance in the governmental fund financial statements a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted fund balance to have been depleted before using any of the components of unrestricted fund balance. Further, when the components of unrestricted fund balance can be used for the same purpose, committed fund balance is depleted first, followed by assigned fund balance. Unassigned fund balance is applied last. The general fund is the only fund that reports a positive unassigned fund balance.

#### **9. Fund Balance Policies**

Fund balance of governmental funds is reported in various categories based on the nature of any limitations requiring the use of resources for specific purposes. The District itself can establish limitations on the use of resources through either a commitment (committed fund balance) or an assignment (assigned fund balance).

The committed fund balance classification includes amounts that can be used only for the specific purposes determined by a formal action of the District's highest level of decision-making authority. The Board is the highest level of decision-making authority for the District that can, by board action or adoption of a resolution prior to the end of the fiscal year, commit fund balance. Once adopted, the limitation imposed by board action or the resolution remains in place until a similar action is taken (the board action or adoption of another resolution) to remove or revise the limitation.

Amounts in the assigned fund balance classification are intended to be used by the District for specific purposes but do not meet the criteria to be classified as committed. The Board has, by policy, authorized the superintendent or his designee to assign fund balance. The Board may also assign fund balance as it does when appropriating fund balance to cover a gap between estimated revenue and appropriations in the subsequent year's appropriated budget. Unlike commitments, assignments generally exist temporarily. In other words, an additional action does not normally have to be taken for the removal of an assignment. Conversely, as discussed above, an additional action is essential to either remove or revise a commitment.

#### **10. Pension**

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) Pension Plan has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS's Pension Plan fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

#### **11. Other Postemployment Benefits**

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) TRS Care Plan has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net OPEB liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other postemployment benefits, OPEB expense and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS Care's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. There are no investments as this is a pay-as-you-go plan and all cash is held in a cash account.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### H. Revenues and Expenditures/Expenses

#### 1. *Program Revenues*

Amounts reported as program revenues include 1) charges to customers or applicants who purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods, services, or privileges provided by a given function or segment and 2) grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular function or segment. All taxes, including those dedicated for specific purposes and other internally dedicated resources are reported as general revenues rather than as program revenues.

#### 2. *Property Taxes*

Property values are determined by the County Central Appraisal District as of January 1 of each year. Prior to September 1 of each year, District must adopt its annual budget and as soon thereafter as practicable, shall adopt a tax rate thus creating the tax levy. Property taxes for the current calendar year are levied on approximately October 1 of each year and are payable by January 31 of the following year. Property tax receivables are recorded as of the date levied. Unpaid taxes become delinquent on February 1 and a tax lien on real property is created as of July 1 of each year.

### I. Use of Estimates

The presentation of financial statements, in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles, requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenditures during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

### J. Data Control Codes

The Data Control Codes refer to the account code structure prescribed by Texas Education Agency (TEA) in the Financial Accountability System Resource Guide. TEA requires school districts to display these codes in the financial statements filed with TEA in order to ensure accuracy in building a statewide database for policy development and funding plans.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Note 2. Stewardship, Compliance and Accountability

#### A. Budgetary Information

Annual budgets are adopted on a basis consistent with generally accepted accounting principles for the general fund, *National School Breakfast and Lunch Program* special revenue fund and debt service fund. All annual appropriations lapse at fiscal year-end. The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data reflected in the financial statements.

1. Prior to August 20 of the preceding fiscal year, the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year beginning September 1. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
2. A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget after ten days' public notice of the meeting has been given.
3. Prior to September 1, the budget is legally enacted through passage of a resolution by the Board.

The appropriated budget is prepared by fund, function and campus/department. The District's campus/department heads may make transfers of appropriations within a department. Transfers of appropriations between campus/departments require the approval of the District's management. Transfers of appropriations between functions require the approval of the Board. The legal level of budgetary control (i.e., the level at which expenditures may not legally exceed appropriations) is the function level within a fund. The District amended general fund budget throughout the year between functions and total appropriations.

#### B. Encumbrances

Encumbrance accounting is employed in governmental funds. Encumbrances (e.g., purchase orders, contracts) outstanding at year end are reported as restricted, committed, or assigned fund balances as appropriate. The encumbrances do not constitute expenditures or liabilities because the commitments will be appropriated and honored during the subsequent year.

Significant encumbrances included in governmental fund balances are as follows:

	<u>Restricted Fund Balance</u>	<u>Assigned Fund Balance</u>
General fund	\$ -	\$ 36,840
Capital projects fund	<u>4,716,283</u>	<u>-</u>
<b>Total encumbrances</b>	<b><u>\$ 4,716,283</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 36,840</u></b>

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Note 3. Detailed Notes on All Funds

#### A. Deposits and Investments

##### Cash Deposits

The District's funds are required to be deposited and invested under the terms of a depository contract pursuant to the Texas School Depository Act. The depository bank pledges securities which comply with state law and these securities are held for safekeeping and trust with the District's and the depository banks' agent bank. The pledged securities shall be in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day-to-day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of approved securities is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) insurance.

##### Investments

The District's investment policy is in accordance with the Public Funds Investment Act, the Public Funds Collateral Act, and federal and state laws. State law and District policy limits credit risk by allowing investing in 1) Obligations of the United States or its agencies which are backed by the full faith and credit of the United States, obligations of the State of Texas or its agencies, counties, cities and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization (NRSRO) not less than A or its equivalent; 2) Certificates of deposit issued by a broker or depository located in Texas which is insured by the FDIC or purchased through a broker who has an office located in Texas; 3) Fully collateralized repurchase agreements secured by obligations of the United States or its agencies not to exceed 90 days to maturity from the date of purchase; 4) Securities lending program as permitted by Government Code 2256.0015; 5) Bankers acceptances with a stated maturity of 270 days or fewer which are eligible for collateral for borrowing from a Federal Reserve Bank; 6) Commercial paper if it has a stated maturity of 270 days or fewer from the date of its issuance and is rated not less than A-1 or P-1 or an equivalent rating by at least two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or one nationally recognized agency and is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a bank organized and existing under the laws of the United States or any state; 7) No-load money market mutual funds which shall be registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission and have a dollar-weighted average stated maturity of 90 days or fewer; 8) No-load mutual funds which shall be registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission, have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, include investments that comply with the Public Funds Investment Act and are continuously rated not less than AAA by at least one NRSRO; 9) A guaranteed investment contract (for bond proceeds only) which meets the criteria and eligibility requirements established by the Public Funds Investment Act; 10) Public funds investment pools which meet the requirements of the Public Funds Investment Act.

The District categorizes its fair value measurements within the fair value hierarchy established by generally accepted accounting principles. GASB Statement No. 72, *Fair Value Measurement and Application* provides a framework for measuring fair value which establishes a three-level fair value hierarchy that describes the inputs that are used to measure assets and liabilities.

- Level 1 inputs are quoted prices (unadjusted) for identical assets or liabilities in active markets that a government can access at the measurement date.
- Level 2 inputs are inputs—other than quoted prices included within Level 1—that are observable for an asset or liability, either directly or indirectly.
- Level 3 inputs are unobservable inputs for an asset or liability.

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

The fair value hierarchy gives the highest priority to Level 1 inputs and the lowest priority to Level 3 inputs. If a price for an identical asset or liability is not observable, a government should measure fair value using another valuation technique that maximizes the use of relevant observable inputs and minimizes the use of unobservable inputs. If the fair value of an asset or a liability is measured using inputs from more than one level of the fair value hierarchy, the measurement is considered to be based on the lowest priority level input that is significant to the entire measurement.

The District's measurements of investments are presented in the table below. The District's investment balances and weighted average maturity and credit risk of such investments are as follows:

	Fair Value Measurement Using				Moody's / S&P Rating
	August 31, 2018	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Percent of Total Investments	Weighted Average Maturity (Days)	
Investments measured at amortized cost:					
Investment pools					
Texpool - LGIP	\$ 118,626,406	\$ -	97%	28	AAAm
Lone Star Overnight	3,945,774	-	3%	20	AAAm
Investments measured at fair value:					
Wells Fargo money market mutual funds	-	1,383,811	0%	35	AAAm/Aaa-mf
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 122,572,180</b>	<b>\$ 1,383,811</b>	<b>100%</b>		
<b>Portfolio weighted average maturity</b>				<b>28</b>	

*Investment Pools* are measured at amortized cost. Such investments are not required to be reported by levels in the table above.

*Wells Fargo Money Market Mutual Funds* are reported at fair value. Such investments are reported as level 1 in the table above.

The TexPool and Lone Star Overnight investment pools are external investment pools measured at amortized cost. In order to meet the criteria to be recorded at amortized cost, investment pools must transact at a stable net asset value per share and maintain certain maturity, quality, liquidity and diversification requirements within the investment pool. The investment pools transact at a net asset value of \$1.00 per share, have weighted average maturity of 60 days or less and weighted average life of 120 days or less, investments held are highly rated by nationally recognized statistical rating organization, have no more than 5% of portfolio with one issuer (excluding U.S. government securities) and can meet reasonably foreseeable redemptions. TexPool and Lone Star Overnight have a redemption notice period of one day and no maximum transaction amounts. The investment pools' authorities may only impose restrictions on redemptions in the event of a general suspension of trading on major securities market, general banking moratorium or national or state emergency that affects the pools' liquidity.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Credit Risk

For fiscal year 2018, the District invested in Wells Fargo Money Market Mutual Funds, TexPool, and Lone Star Investment Pool. TexPool is duly chartered and administered by the State Comptroller’s Office. Lone Star Investment Pool is duly chartered by the State of Texas Interlocal Cooperation Act and is administered by First Public, LLC, formerly, the Texas Association of School Boards Financial Services. The credit rating for investments are noted in the table above.

### Interest Rate Risk

Interest rate risk is the risk that changes in interest rates may adversely affect the value of the investments. The District monitors interest rate risk utilizing weighted average maturity analysis. In accordance with its investment policy, the District reduces its exposure to declines in fair values by limiting the weighted average maturity of its investment portfolio as a whole to no more than 180 days, diversification and by holding securities to maturity not to exceed one year unless specifically authorized by the Board of Trustees.

### Concentration of Credit Risk

The District’s investment policy does not limit an investment in any one issuer.

### Custodial Credit Risk – Deposits

In the case of deposits, this is the risk that in the event of a bank failure, the District’s deposits may not be returned to it. As of August 31, 2018, the District’s bank balance of \$10,124,646 at the local bank was not exposed to custodial credit risk because it was insured and collateralized with securities held by the District’s agent and in the District’s name.

### Custodial Credit Risk – Investments

For an investment, this is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty, the District will not be able to recover the value of its investments or collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. The District is not exposed to custodial credit risk due to the investments are insured or registered in the District’s name, or the investments are held by the District or its agent.

## B. Receivables

Tax revenues of the general and debt service fund are reported net of uncollectible amounts. Total change in uncollectible amounts related to revenues of the current period increased (decreased) revenues as follows:

Change in uncollectibles related to General Fund property taxes	\$ 1,000
Change in uncollectibles related to Debt Service property taxes	<u>-</u>
<b>Total change in uncollectibles of the current fiscal year</b>	<b><u><u>\$ 1,000</u></u></b>



**New Caney Independent School District**  
Notes to the Financial Statements

**C. Interfund Receivables and Payables**

**1. Receivables/Payables**

The composition of interfund balances as of August 31, 2018, was as follows:

Fund	Interfund Receivables	Interfund Payables
General Fund	\$ 1,829,313	\$ 56,382
Debt Service Fund	56,382	-
Capital Projects Funds	-	2,141
Other governmental funds - nonmajor	-	1,827,172
<b>Totals</b>	<b>\$ 1,885,695</b>	<b>\$ 1,885,695</b>

Interfund balances consist of short-term lending/borrowing arrangements that result primarily from payroll and other regularly occurring charges that are primarily paid by the one fund and then charged back to the appropriate other fund. Additionally, some lending/borrowing may occur between two or more non-major governmental funds.

**2. Transfers**

There were no interfund transfers between the various funds at August 31, 2018.

**D. Capital Assets**

Capital asset activity for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018 was as follows:

	Beginning Balance	Additions	Reductions and Adjustments	Transfers	Ending Balance
Governmental activities:					
Capital assets, not being depreciated:					
Land and improvements	\$ 28,232,772	\$ 5,354,780	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 33,587,552
Construction in progress	33,619,346	47,788,147	-	(49,853,257)	31,554,236
Total capital assets, not being depreciated	61,852,118	53,142,927	-	(49,853,257)	65,141,788
Capital assets, being depreciated:					
Buildings and improvements	374,974,004	1,313,222	-	49,853,257	426,140,483
Furniture and equipment	17,623,696	2,610,261	(14,331)	-	20,219,626
Total capital assets, being depreciated	392,597,700	3,923,483	(14,331)	49,853,257	446,360,109
Less accumulated depreciation for:					
Buildings and improvements	(97,770,237)	(10,321,047)	-	-	(108,091,284)
Furniture and equipment	(11,550,457)	(2,002,781)	14,331	-	(13,538,907)
Total accumulated depreciation	(109,320,694)	(12,323,828)	14,331	-	(121,630,191)
Total capital assets, being depreciated, net	283,277,006	(8,400,345)	-	49,853,257	324,729,918
<b>Governmental activities capital assets, net</b>	<b>\$ 345,129,124</b>	<b>\$ 44,742,582</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 389,871,706</b>

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

Depreciation expense was charged to functions/programs of the District as follows:

Governmental Activities:	
11 Instruction	\$ 8,554,558
12 Instructional resources and media services	174,857
13 Curriculum and instructional staff development	35,535
21 Instructional leadership	506
23 School leadership	98,456
31 Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	24,169
33 Health services	24,169
34 Student (pupil) transportation	1,032,480
35 Food services	226,885
36 Extracurricular activities	1,690,732
41 General administration	53,649
51 Plant maintenance and operations	191,245
52 Security and monitoring services	22,568
53 Data processing	194,019
	<hr/>
<b>Total depreciation expense-governmental activities</b>	<b><u><u>\$ 12,323,828</u></u></b>

#### Construction Commitments

The District had active construction projects as of August 31, 2018. The projects include the construction and equipment of school facilities. At year end, the District's commitments with contractors are as follows:

<u>Project</u>	<u>Remaining Commitment</u>
Brookwood Elementary School	\$ 33,479
New Caney High School	1,741,269
New Caney Middle School	328,825
Bens Branch, Crippen, Valley Ranch, Sorters Mill and Oakley ES	2,612,710
	<hr/>
<b>Totals</b>	<b><u><u>\$ 4,716,283</u></u></b>

The commitment for construction and equipment of school facilities is being financed by general obligation bonds secured by tax revenues and local funds.

#### E. Long-term Liabilities

The District's long-term liabilities consist of bond indebtedness and net pension and OPEB liability. The current requirements for general obligation bonds principal and interest expenditures are accounted for in the debt service fund. Other long-term liabilities are generally liquidated with resources of the general fund.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Changes in Long-term Liabilities

Long-term liability activity for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, was as follows:

	Beginning Balance	Additions	Reductions	Ending Balance	Due Within One Year
Governmental activities:					
Bonds payable:					
General obligation bonds	\$ 411,228,762	\$ 87,565,000	\$ (37,753,410)	\$ 461,040,352	\$ 7,384,994
Issuance premiums	28,987,120	5,150,556	(1,563,053)	32,574,623	-
Issuance discounts	(263,774)	-	160,928	(102,846)	-
For accreted interest (CAB's)	2,598,063	136,330	(1,036,590)	1,697,803	-
Total bonds payable, net	442,550,171	92,851,886	(40,192,125)	495,209,932	7,384,994
Net pension liability	32,755,201	5,538,542	(8,635,609)	29,658,134	-
Net OPEB liability*	87,840,330	8,419	(38,093,528)	49,755,221	-
<b>Governmental activities</b>					
<b>long-term liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 563,145,702</b>	<b>\$ 98,398,847</b>	<b>\$ (86,921,262)</b>	<b>\$ 574,623,287</b>	<b>\$ 7,384,994</b>

\* Per GASB Statement No. 75, beginning balance for net OPEB liability includes the restatement of the net OPEB liability at September 1, 2017.

### General Obligation Bonds

The District issues general obligation bonds to provide funds for the construction and equipment of school facilities buildings (BLDG) and to refund general obligation bonds (REF). General obligation bonds are direct obligations and pledge the full faith and credit of the District. These bonds are issued as 14-32 year current interest and capital appreciation bonds (CAB) with various amounts of principal maturing each year. The following is a summary of changes in the general obligation bonds for the fiscal year:

Series	Interest Rate	Original Issue	Maturity Date	Beginning Balance	Additions	Reductions	Ending Balance
2006 (CAB) REF	-	\$ 4,385,000	2/15/2020	\$ 483,762	\$ -	\$ (183,410)	\$ 300,352
2008 BLDG	3.50-5.00%	19,625,000	2/15/2038	7,650,000	-	(7,650,000)	-
2009 BLDG	4.0-5.0%	26,470,000	2/15/2039	24,105,000	-	(23,515,000)	590,000
2010 REF	2-4.125%	8,135,000	2/15/2030	5,560,000	-	-	5,560,000
2010 (CAB) REF	-	2,540,000	2/15/2020	1,165,000	-	(630,000)	535,000
2010 BLDG	3.75-4.50%	12,650,000	2/15/2039	12,650,000	-	-	12,650,000
2010A REF	2.0-4.0%	4,080,000	2/15/2030	2,985,000	-	(185,000)	2,800,000
2011 REF	2.0-4.0%	9,255,000	2/15/2033	8,000,000	-	(285,000)	7,715,000
2012 BLDG	3.50-5.00%	55,000,000	2/15/2042	50,235,000	-	-	50,235,000
2012 REF	2.00-5.00%	17,150,000	2/15/2033	15,490,000	-	(495,000)	14,995,000
2013 REF	3.25-6.25%	13,985,000	2/15/2035	12,875,000	-	(420,000)	12,455,000
2013 BLDG	3.00-5.00%	31,850,000	2/15/2042	29,830,000	-	(1,005,000)	28,825,000
2014 REF	2.00-4.00%	7,680,000	2/15/2033	6,590,000	-	(325,000)	6,265,000
2014 BLDG	2-4.25%	9,240,000	2/15/2042	5,990,000	-	(180,000)	5,810,000
2015 REF	2.00-5.00%	51,500,000	2/15/2037	50,870,000	-	(1,425,000)	49,445,000
2015 BLDG	2.00-5.00%	86,315,000	2/15/2045	85,060,000	-	(955,000)	84,105,000
2015A REF	2.00-5.00%	10,610,000	2/15/2030	10,435,000	-	-	10,435,000
2016 REF	2.00-4.00%	8,605,000	8/15/2038	8,465,000	-	-	8,465,000
2017 BLDG	2.00-5.00%	73,895,000	2/15/2047	72,790,000	-	(395,000)	72,395,000
2017 REF	2.00-5.00%	28,550,000	2/15/2039	-	28,550,000	(105,000)	28,445,000
2018 BLDG	2.00-5.00%	59,015,000	2/15/2050	-	59,015,000	-	59,015,000
<b>Totals</b>				<b>\$ 411,228,762</b>	<b>\$ 87,565,000</b>	<b>\$ (37,753,410)</b>	<b>\$ 461,040,352</b>

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

Annual debt service requirements to maturity for general obligation bonds are as follows:

Year Ending August 31,	Principal Value	Interest	Total Requirements
2019	\$ 7,384,994	\$ 19,326,394	\$ 26,711,388
2020	7,410,358	18,918,168	26,328,526
2021	8,685,000	18,561,618	27,246,618
2022	9,080,000	18,758,586	27,838,586
2023	9,500,000	18,339,293	27,839,293
2024	9,935,000	17,900,821	27,835,821
2025	10,380,000	17,454,881	27,834,881
2026	10,845,000	16,988,094	27,833,094
2027	11,325,000	16,506,532	27,831,532
2028	11,805,000	16,031,463	27,836,463
2029	12,270,000	15,559,922	27,829,922
2030	12,760,000	15,071,209	27,831,209
2031	13,330,000	14,565,209	27,895,209
2032	13,875,000	14,018,287	27,893,287
2033	14,490,000	13,409,868	27,899,868
2034	15,030,000	12,748,940	27,778,940
2035	15,705,000	12,078,353	27,783,353
2036	16,230,000	11,394,281	27,624,281
2037	16,965,000	10,660,719	27,625,719
2038	17,590,000	9,890,306	27,480,306
2039	18,115,000	9,089,844	27,204,844
2040	17,330,000	8,289,650	25,619,650
2041	18,135,000	7,487,625	25,622,625
2042	18,975,000	6,647,950	25,622,950
2043	19,840,000	5,784,250	25,624,250
2044	20,725,000	4,896,150	25,621,150
2045	21,655,000	3,967,825	25,622,825
2046	20,090,000	3,036,325	23,126,325
2047	21,020,000	2,100,850	23,120,850
2048	13,065,000	1,361,100	14,426,100
2049	13,505,000	829,700	14,334,700
2050	13,990,000	279,800	14,269,800
<b>Totals</b>	<u>\$ 461,040,352</u>	<u>\$ 361,954,013</u>	<u>\$ 822,994,365</u>

As of August 31, 2018, the District had \$140,000,000 in authorized but unissued bonds.

In February 2018, the District issued \$59,015,000 of unlimited tax school building bonds with interest rates between 2.0% and 5.0%. The bond proceeds will be used for construction and equipment of school buildings. The debt service on the bond is due semi-annually on February and August 15th and will mature February 15, 2050.

In September 2017, the District issued \$28,550,000 of refunding bonds. The proceeds of the refunding bonds were used to legally defease \$30,075,000 of previously issued District bonds in order to lower its overall debt service requirements. The reacquisition price exceeded the net carrying value of the old debt by \$1,912,712. The District advance-refunded the bonds in order to reduce its future debt service payments by \$5,250,774 and to obtain an economic gain (difference between the present values of the debt service payments on the old and new debt) of \$237,721.

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

The District defeased certain bonds through the issuance of new bonds and placed the proceeds in an irrevocable trust to provide for all future debt service payments of the old bonds. Securities being utilized to repay the refinanced debt as it becomes due consist solely of U.S. government obligations. Accordingly, the trust account securities and the liability for the defeased bonds are not included in the District's basic financial statements. At August 31, 2018, the following outstanding bonds are considered defeased:

2009 General Obligation Bonds (maturing 2020-2039, callable August 15, 2019)	<u>\$22,935,000</u>
<b>Total</b>	<u><u>\$22,935,000</u></u>

#### F. Fund Balance

Other committed fund balance includes the following commitments of funds:

Other governmental funds:	
Campus activity	<u>\$ 486,630</u>
<b>Total other committed fund balance</b>	<u><u>\$ 486,630</u></u>

#### G. Revenues from Local and Intermediate Sources

During the current year, revenues from local and intermediate sources consisted of the following:

	General	Debt Service	Capital Projects	Other Governmental Funds	Totals
Property taxes	\$ 45,113,846	\$ 19,265,420	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 64,379,266
Investment income	486,822	232,889	905,357	15,072	1,640,140
Food sales	-	-	-	2,228,866	2,228,866
Other	996,571	-	-	1,164,338	2,160,909
<b>Total</b>	<u>\$ 46,597,239</u>	<u>\$ 19,498,309</u>	<u>\$ 905,357</u>	<u>\$ 3,408,276</u>	<u>\$ 70,409,181</u>

#### Note 4. Other Information

##### A. Risk Management

###### Property/Liability

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to property/liability losses for which the District participates in the Texas Association of Public Schools Property and Liability Fund. The Fund was created to formulate, develop and administer a program of modified self-funding for the Fund's membership, obtain competitive costs for coverages and develop a comprehensive loss control program. The District pays an annual premium to the Fund for its liability coverage and transfers the risk of loss to the Fund. The District's agreement with the Fund provides that the Fund will be self-sustaining through member premiums and may provide, through commercial companies, reinsurance contracts. In the event that the Fund was to discontinue operations, the member districts would be responsible for any eligible claims not funded by the Fund. In addition, there were no significant reductions in coverages in the past fiscal year and there were no settlements exceeding insurance coverages for each of the past three fiscal years.

## **New Caney Independent School District**

### Notes to the Financial Statements

#### **Health Care Coverage**

During the year ended August 31, 2018, employees of the District were covered by TRS-Active Care (the Plan) a statewide health coverage program for Texas public education employees, implemented by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). The District paid premiums of \$250 per month, per employee to the Plan. Employees, at their option, authorized payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents. All premiums were paid to the TRS. The legislature created the Plan for public school employee group health coverage in 2002-03, requiring all Districts with fewer than 500 employees to participate in the Plan.

#### **Workers' Compensation**

The District participates in the Texas Public Workers' Compensation Program ("Program"). The Program was created to formulate, develop and administer a program of modified self-funding for the Program's membership, obtain competitive costs for coverages and develop a comprehensive loss control program. The District pays an annual premium to the Program for its coverages and transfers the risk of loss to the Program. The District's agreement with the Program provides that the Program will be self-sustaining through member premiums and will provide, through commercial companies, reinsurance contracts. In regards to the workers' compensation program, the Program maintains stop loss coverage for any claim in excess of the Program's self-insured retention. In the event that the Program was to discontinue operations or leave the Program, the member districts would be responsible for any eligible claims not funded by the Program. There were no significant reductions in insurance coverage from the prior year or settlements exceeding insurance coverage for each of the past three fiscal years.

#### **B. Litigation and Contingencies**

The District is a defendant in various lawsuits arising principally in the normal course of operations. In the opinion of the District's management, the potential claims will not have a material effect on the District's financial position or results of operations.

The District participates in a number of federal and state financial assistance programs. Although the District's grant programs have been audited in accordance with the provisions of the Single Audit Act through August 31, 2018, these programs are subject to financial and compliance audits by the grantor agencies. The District is also subject to audit by the TEA of the attendance data upon which payments from the agency are based. These audits could result in questioned costs or refunds to be paid back to the granting agencies.

#### **C. Defined Benefit Pension Plan**

##### **Plan Description**

The District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67 and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Detailed information about the TRS's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (CAFR) that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

### Benefits Provided

TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan Description above.

### Contributions

Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83<sup>rd</sup> Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 through 2017. The 84<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2016 and 2017 and the 85<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, GAA established the employer contribution rates for plan fiscal years 2018 and 2019. Rates for such plan fiscal years are as follows:

	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Member	7.7%	7.7%	7.2%
Non-employer contributing entity (state)	6.8%	6.8%	6.8%
Employers/district	6.8%	6.8%	6.8%

The contribution amounts for the District's fiscal year 2018 are as follows:

District contributions	\$ 3,512,303
Member contributions	7,953,894
NECE On-behalf contributions (state)	4,780,464

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State is the employer for senior colleges, medical schools and state agencies including TRS. In each respective role, the State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the GAA.

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education and junior colleges, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers (public school, junior college, other entities or the State of Texas as the employer for senior universities and medical schools) are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment.
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding sources, a privately sponsored source, from non-educational and general, or local funds.
- When the employing district is a public junior college or junior college district, the employer shall contribute to the retirement system an amount equal to 50% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to.

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district or charter school does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

#### Actuarial Assumptions

The total pension liability in the August 31, 2017 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation date	August 31, 2017
Actuarial cost method	Individual entry age normal
Asset valuation method	Market value
Single discount rate	8.00%
Long-term expected rate	8.00%
Municipal bond rate	N/A*
Last year ending August 31 in the 2017 to 2116 projection period (100 years)	2116
Inflation	2.50%
Salary increases	3.50% to 9.50% including inflation
Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes	None

\*If a municipal bond rate was to be used, the rate would be 3.42% as of August 2017 (i.e. the rate closest to but not later than the Measurement Date). The source for the rate is the Fixed Income Market Data/Yield Curve/Data Municipal Bonds with 20 years to maturity that include only federally tax-exempt municipal bonds as reported in Fidelity Index's "20-Year Municipal GO AA Index."



## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

The actuarial methods and assumptions are based primarily on a study of actual experience for the four year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.

#### Discount Rate

The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8.0%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability. The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8.0%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the System's target asset allocation as of August 31, 2017 are summarized below:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Long-Term Expected Geometric Real Rate of Return	Expected Contribution to Long-Term Portfolio Returns*
Global equity			
U.S.	18.0%	4.6%	1.0%
Non-U.S. developed	13.0%	5.1%	0.8%
Emerging markets	9.0%	5.9%	0.7%
Directional hedge funds	4.0%	3.2%	0.1%
Private equity	13.0%	7.0%	1.1%
Stable value			
U.S. treasuries	11.0%	0.7%	0.1%
Absolute return	0.0%	1.8%	0.0%
Stable value hedge funds	4.0%	3.0%	0.1%
Cash	1.0%	(0.2%)	0.0%
Real return			
Global inflation linked bonds	3.0%	0.9%	0.0%
Real assets	16.0%	5.1%	1.1%
Energy and natural resources	3.0%	6.6%	0.2%
Commodities	0.0%	1.2%	0.0%
Risk Parity			
Risk parity	5.0%	6.7%	0.3%
Inflation expectation			2.2%
Alpha			1.0%
<b>Totals</b>	<b>100.0%</b>		<b>8.7%</b>

\*The expected contribution to returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between arithmetic and geometric mean returns.

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

#### Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following table presents the District's proportionate share of net pension liability for TRS calculated using the discount rate of 8.0%, as well as the District's proportionate share of the respective net pension liability if it was calculated using a discount rate that is 1% lower (7%) or 1% higher (9%) than the current rate:

1% Decrease (7.00%)	Current Discount Rate (8.00%)	1% Increase (9.00%)
\$ 49,997,754	\$ 29,658,134	\$ 12,722,099

#### Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

At August 31, 2018, the District reported a liability of \$29,658,134 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with the District are as follows:

District's proportionate share of the net pension liability	\$ 29,658,134
State's proportionate share of the net pension liability associated with the district	<u>45,319,803</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b><u>\$ 74,977,937</u></b>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The District's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the District's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 through August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017, the employer's proportion of the net pension liability was 0.0927553% which was an increase of 0.006075% from its proportion measured as of August 31, 2016.

#### Changes since the Prior Actuarial Valuation

There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, the District recognized pension expense of \$8,101,563 and revenue of \$3,456,814 for support provided by the State.

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

At August 31, 2018, the District reported deferred outflows of resources for contribution made after the measurement date and its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ 433,912	\$ 1,599,424
Changes of assumptions	1,350,975	773,402
Net difference between projected and actual earnings on pension plan investments	-	2,161,420
Changes in proportion and differences between District contributions and proportionate share of contributions (cost-sharing plan)	7,255,961	1,965
District contribution after measurement date	3,512,303	-
<b>Totals</b>	<b>\$ 12,553,151</b>	<b>\$ 4,536,211</b>

\$3,512,303 was reported as deferred outflows of resources related to pensions resulting from District contributions subsequent to the measurement date will be recognized as a reduction of the net pension liability in the year ended August 31, 2019. Other amounts reported as deferred outflows of resources (deferred inflows of resources) related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

<u>August 31,</u>	
2019	\$ 697,248
2020	2,590,403
2021	551,788
2022	(10,096)
2023	468,295
Thereafter	<u>206,999</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 4,504,637</b>

#### D. Defined Other Postemployment Benefit Plan

##### Plan Description

The District participates in the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care). It is a multiple-employer, cost-sharing defined Other Postemployment Benefit (OPEB) plan that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered through a trust by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) Board of Trustees. It is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575.

##### OPEB Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Detail information about the TRS-Care's fiduciary net position is available in the separately-issued TRS Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Benefits Provided

TRS-Care provides a basic health insurance coverage (TRS-Care 1), at no cost to all retirees from public schools, charter schools, regional education service centers and other educational districts who are members of the TRS pension plan. Optional dependent coverage is available for an additional fee.

Eligible retirees and their dependents not enrolled in Medicare may pay premiums to participate in one of two optional insurance plans with more comprehensive benefits (TRS-Care 2 and TRS-Care 3). Eligible retirees and dependents enrolled in Medicare may elect to participate in one of the two Medicare health plans for an additional fee. To qualify for TRS-Care coverage, a retiree must have at least 10 years of service credit in the TRS pension system. The Board of Trustees is granted the authority to establish basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants as well as to amend benefit terms as needed under Chapter 1575.052. There are no automatic postemployment benefit changes; including automatic cost of living adjustments.

The premium rates for the optional health insurance are based on years of service of the member. The schedule below shows the monthly rates for the average retiree with Medicare Parts A&B coverage, with 20 to 29 years of service for the basic plan and the two optional plans.

TRS-Care Plan Premium Rates  
Effective September 1, 2016-December 31, 2017

	TRS-Care 1 Basic Plan	TRS-Care 2 Optional Plan	TRS-Care 3 Optional Plan
Retiree*	\$ -	\$ 70	\$ 100
Retiree and spouse	20	175	255
Retiree* and children	41	132	182
Retiree and family	61	237	337
Surviving children only	28	62	82

\* or surviving spouse

### Contributions

Contribution rates for the TRS-Care plan are established in state statute by the Texas Legislature and there is no continuing obligation to provide benefits beyond each fiscal year. The TRS-Care plan is currently funded on a pay-as-you-go basis and is subject to change based on available funding. Funding for TRS-Care is provided by retiree premium contributions and contributions from the state, active employees and school districts based upon public school district payroll. The TRS Board of trustees does not have the authority to set or amend contribution rates.

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

Texas Insurance Code, section 1575.202 establishes the state's contribution rate which is 1.0% of the employee's salary. Section 1575.203 establishes the active employee's rate which is 0.65% of pay. Section 1575.204 establishes an employer contribution rate of not less than 0.25% or not more than 0.75% of the salary of each active employee of the public. The actual employer contribution rate is prescribed by the Legislature in the General Appropriations Act. The following table shows contributions to the TRS-Care plan by type of contributor.

	2018	2017
Active employee	0.65%	0.65%
Non-employer contribution entity (state)	1.25%	1.00%
Employers/District	0.75%	0.55%
Federal/private funding remitted by employers	1.25%	1.00%

The contribution amounts for the District's fiscal year 2018 are as follows:

District contributions	\$ 768,008
Member contributions	671,433
NECE on-behalf contributions (state)	1,459,097

In addition, the State of Texas contributed \$229,976, \$304,967 and \$357,237 in 2018, 2017, and 2016, respectively, for on-behalf payments for Medicare Part D.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there is an additional surcharge all TRS employers are subject to (*regardless of whether or not they participate in the TRS Care OPEB program*). When employers hire a TRS retiree, they are required to pay to TRS Care, a monthly surcharge of \$535 per retiree.

TRS-Care received supplemental appropriations from the State of Texas as the Non-Employer Contributing Entity in the amount of \$15.6 million in fiscal year 2017 and \$212 million in fiscal year 2018.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Actuarial Assumptions

The actuarial valuation of TRS-Care is similar to the actuarial valuations performed for the pension plan, except that the OPEB valuation is more complex. All of the demographic assumptions, including mortality, and most of the economic assumptions are identical to those which were adopted by the Plan's Board in 2015 and are based on the 2014 actuarial experience study of TRS.

The active mortality rates were based on 90 percent of the RP-2014 Employee Mortality Tables for males and females. The post-retirement mortality rates were based on the 2015 TRS of Texas Healthy Pensioner Mortality Tables.

The following additional actuarial methods and assumptions were employed in the August 31, 2017 actuarial valuation of the total OPEB liability:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2017
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Inflation	2.50%
Discount Rate*	3.42%*
Aging Factors	Based on plan specific experience
Expenses	Third-party administrative expenses related to the delivery of health care benefits are included in the age-adjusted claims costs.
Payroll Growth Rate	2.50%
Projected Salary Increases**	3.50% to 9.50%**
Healthcare Trend Rates***	4.50% to 12.00%***
Election Rates	Normal Retirement: 70% participation prior to age 65 and 75% participation after age 65
Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes	None

\*Source: Fixed Income municipal bonds with 20 years to maturity that include only federal tax-exempt municipal bonds as reported in Fidelity Index's "20-Year Municipal GO AA Index" as of August 31, 2017.

\*\*Includes Inflation at 2.50%

\*\*\*Initial trend rates are 7.00% for non-Medicare retiree; 10.00% for Medicare retirees and 12.00% for prescriptions for all retirees. Initial trend rates decrease to an ultimate trend rate of 4.50% over a period of 10 years.

### Discount Rate

A single discount rate of 3.42% was used to measure the total OPEB liability. There was a change of 0.44% in the discount rate since the previous year. Because the plan is essentially a "pay-as-you-go" plan, the single discount rate is equal to the prevailing municipal bond rate. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from active members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the OPEB plan's fiduciary net position was projected to not be able to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the municipal bond rate was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total OPEB liability.

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Financial Statements

### Sensitivity of the Net OPEB Liability

#### Discount Rate

The following schedule shows the impact of the net OPEB liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (3.42%) in measuring the net OPEB liability.

Sensitivity of the Net OPEB Liability  
to the Single Discount Rate Assumptions

1% Decrease (2.42%)	Current Discount Rate (3.42%)	1% Increase (4.42%)
\$58,723,513	\$49,755,221	\$42,546,737

#### Healthcare Cost Trend Rates

The following presents the net OPEB liability of the plan using the assumed healthcare cost trend rate, as well as what the net OPEB liability would be if it were calculated using a trend rate that is 1% lower or 1% higher than the assumed health-care cost trend rate:

Sensitivity of the Net OPEB Liability to  
the Healthcare Cost Trend Rate Assumptions

1% Decrease	Current Healthcare Cost Trend Rate	1% Increase
\$41,426,192	\$49,755,221	\$60,683,957

### OPEB Liabilities, OPEB Expense and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to OPEBs

As of August 31, 2018, the District reported a liability of \$49,755,221 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net OPEB liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State OPEB support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability, the related State support and the total portion of the net OPEB liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability	\$ 49,755,221
State's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability associated with the District	<u>75,560,484</u>
<b>Total</b>	<u><u>\$ 125,315,705</u></u>

The net OPEB liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the total OPEB liability used to calculate the net OPEB liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the net OPEB liability was based on the employer's contributions to the OPEB plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 through August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017, the employer's proportion of the collective net OPEB liability was 0.011442% which was the same proportion measured as of August 31, 2016.

## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation** – The following were changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total OPEB liability since the prior measurement period:

1. Significant plan changes were adopted during the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, only one health plan option will exist (instead of three), and all retirees will be required to contribute monthly premiums for coverage. The health plan changes triggered changes to several of the assumptions, including participation rates, retirement rates, and spousal participation rates.
2. The August 31, 2016 valuation had assumed that the savings related to the Medicare Part D reimbursements would phase out by 2022. This assumption was removed for the August 31, 2017 valuation. Although there is uncertainty regarding these federal subsidies, the new assumption better reflects the current substantive plan. This change was unrelated to the plan amendment, and its impact was included as an assumption change in the reconciliation of the total OPEB liability. This change significantly lowered the OPEB liability.
3. The discount rate changed from 2.98% as of August 31, 2016 to 3.42% as of August 31, 2017. This change lowered the total OPEB liability.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total OPEB liability during the measurement period.

Statement No. 75 requires the District to record OPEB expense for the amount of the State's proportionate share of collective OPEB expense that is associated with the District, and record revenue in the same amount for the support provided by the State. For the measurement period ended August 31, 2017, the State's proportionate share of collected OPEB expense was a negative expense of \$8,504,163,580 and the portion of that amount that is associated with the District is a negative expense of \$25,284,547. This amount is recorded as a negative revenue and negative expense for the year ended August 31, 2018.

For the year ended August 31, 2018, the District recognized total negative OPEB expense of \$41,969,890, which includes both the District's proportionate share of collective OPEB expense and the portion of the State's proportionate share of collective OPEB expense that is associated with the District, as described above.

At August 31, 2018, the District reported the District's contribution after the measurement date and its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ -	\$ 1,038,678
Changes of assumptions	-	19,774,025
Net difference between projected and actual earnings on pension plan investments	7,558	-
Changes in proportion and differences between District contributions and proportionate share of contributions (cost-sharing plan)	229	-
District contributions after measurement date	768,007	-
<b>Totals</b>	<b>\$ 775,794</b>	<b>\$20,812,703</b>



## New Caney Independent School District

### Notes to the Financial Statements

\$768,007 reported as deferred outflows of resources related to OPEB resulting from District contributions subsequent to the measurement date will be recognized as a reduction of the net OPEB liability in the fiscal year ended August 31, 2019. Other amounts reported as deferred outflows of resources (deferred inflows of resources) related to OPEB will be recognized in OPEB expense as follows:

Year Ending August 30,	
2019	\$ (2,745,232)
2020	(2,745,232)
2021	(2,745,232)
2022	(2,745,232)
2023	(2,747,122)
Thereafter	<u>(7,076,866)</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b><u><u>\$ (20,804,916)</u></u></b>

#### E. Joint Venture-Shared Service Arrangement

The District participates in the following shared service arrangements:

##### Humble Regional Day School Program for the Deaf

The District participates in a shared service arrangement, Humble Regional Day School Program for the Deaf, with numerous districts for the education of students with a hearing impairment. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, Humble Independent School District, nor does the District have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future additional benefit or burden to the District. The fiscal agent is responsible for the financial activities of the shared service arrangement.

#### F. Net Position Deficit

The statement of net position reported a deficit balance of \$70,103,616 at August 31, 2018 due to the implementation of Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 75, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions, as described earlier in Note 1.E. and Note 4.D.

#### G. Prior Period Adjustment

Net position at September 1, 2017 was restated per the following table for the implementation of GASB Statement No. 75:

	Governmental Activities
Beginning net position, as originally reported	\$ 937,149
Implementation of GASB 75 for OPEB	<u>(87,245,480)</u>
<b>Beginning net position (deficit), restated</b>	<b><u><u>\$ (86,308,331)</u></u></b>

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**

## **Required Supplementary Information**

**New Caney Independent School District**  
**Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes**  
**In Fund Balance – Budget and Actual**  
**General Fund**  
**For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018**

**Exhibit G-1**

Data Control Codes		Budgeted Amounts		Actual	Variance with Final Budget Positive (Negative)
		Original	Final		
<b>REVENUES:</b>					
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ 45,010,100	\$ 45,722,729	\$ 46,597,239	874,510
5800	State program revenues	91,888,433	92,575,733	93,946,630	1,370,897
5900	Federal program revenues	885,000	885,000	1,350,165	465,165
5020	Total revenues	137,783,533	139,183,462	141,894,034	2,710,572
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>					
Current:					
0011	Instruction	79,721,636	78,863,842	77,483,725	1,380,117
0012	Instructional resources and media services	1,346,269	1,349,299	1,286,262	63,037
0013	Curriculum and instructional staff development	2,369,353	2,465,537	2,420,634	44,903
0021	Instructional leadership	1,448,078	1,448,473	1,390,739	57,734
0023	School leadership	8,624,271	8,666,768	8,652,562	14,206
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	4,656,364	4,791,941	4,747,810	44,131
0032	Social work services	-	80	-	80
0033	Health services	1,410,931	1,410,931	1,346,916	64,015
0034	Student transportation	7,345,368	8,188,316	7,802,699	385,617
0036	Extracurricular activities	5,331,666	5,815,647	5,747,139	68,508
0041	General administration	5,399,103	5,609,893	5,374,283	235,610
0051	Plant maintenance and operations	14,724,201	14,491,111	14,417,718	73,393
0052	Security and monitoring services	1,242,115	1,468,295	1,448,408	19,887
0053	Data processing services	3,451,678	4,190,869	4,154,452	36,417
0061	Community services	7,500	17,460	13,030	4,430
Intergovernmental charges:					
0095	Payments to juvenile justice alternative education programs	45,000	30,579	-	30,579
0099	Other intergovernmental charges	660,000	674,421	599,850	74,571
6030	Total expenditures	137,783,533	139,483,462	136,886,227	2,597,235
1200	Net change in fund balance	-	(300,000)	5,007,807	5,307,807
0100	Fund balance - beginning	23,456,512	23,456,512	23,456,512	-
3000	<b>FUND BALANCE - ENDING</b>	<b>\$ 23,456,512</b>	<b>\$ 23,156,512</b>	<b>\$ 28,464,319</b>	<b>\$ 5,307,807</b>

The Notes to the Required Supplementary Information are an integral part of this schedule.

## New Caney Independent School District

Exhibit G-2

### Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability of a Cost-Sharing Multiple-Employer Pension Plan Teacher Retirement System of Texas For the Last Four Fiscal Years

	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
District's proportion of the net pension liability	0.0927553%	0.0866803%	0.086618%	0.0567278%
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability	\$ 29,658,134	\$ 32,755,201	\$ 30,618,310	\$ 15,152,779
State's proportionate share of the net pension liability associated with the District	<u>45,319,803</u>	<u>52,456,045</u>	<u>48,009,456</u>	<u>38,947,704</u>
<b>TOTALS</b>	<u><u>\$ 74,977,937</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 85,211,246</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 78,627,766</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 54,100,483</u></u>
District's covered payroll	\$ 95,872,906	\$ 88,748,492	\$ 82,049,484	\$ 74,214,555
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability as a percentage of its covered payroll	30.93%	36.91%	37.32%	20.42%
Plan fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total pension liability	82.17%	78.00%	78.43%	83.25%

\* The amounts presented for the fiscal years were determined as of the Plan's fiscal year end, August 31 of the prior year.  
Ten years of data is not available.

The Notes to the Required Supplementary Information are an integral part of this schedule.

**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Schedule of the District's Contributions to the  
 Teacher Retirement System of Texas Pension Plan  
 For the Last Four Fiscal Years\*

**Exhibit G-3**

	<u>2018</u>	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
<b>TRS</b>				
Contractually required contributions	\$ 3,512,303	\$ 3,039,976	\$ 2,753,835	\$ 2,564,563
Contributions in relation to the contractually required contributions	<u>(3,512,303)</u>	<u>(3,039,976)</u>	<u>(2,753,835)</u>	<u>(2,564,563)</u>
<b>CONTRIBUTION DEFICIENCY (EXCESS)</b>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
District's covered payroll	\$ 103,297,323	\$ 95,872,906	\$ 88,748,492	\$ 82,049,484
Contributions as a percentage of covered payroll	3.40%	3.17%	3.10%	3.13%

\*The amounts presented for the fiscal years were determined as of the District's fiscal year end August 31.  
 Ten years of data is not available.

**New Caney Independent School District****Exhibit G-4**

Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB  
 Liability of a Cost-Sharing Multiple-Employer OPEB Plan  
 Teacher Retirement System of Texas  
 For the Last Fiscal Year\*

	<u>2018</u>
District's proportion of the net OPEB liability	0.114416%
District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability	\$ 49,755,221
State's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability associated with the District	<u>75,560,484</u>
<b>TOTALS</b>	<b><u>\$ 125,315,705</u></b>
District's covered payroll	\$ 95,872,906
District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability as a percentage of its covered payroll	51.90%
Plan fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total OPEB liability	0.91%

\* The amounts presented for the fiscal year were determined as of the Plan's fiscal year end, August 31 of the prior year. Ten years of data is not available.

**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Schedule of the District's Contributions to the  
 Teacher Retirement System of Texas OPEB Plan  
 For the Last Fiscal Year\*

**Exhibit G-5**

	<u>2018</u>
<b>TRS</b>	
Contractually required contributions	\$ 768,007
Contributions in relation to the contractually required contributions	<u>(768,007)</u>
<b>CONTRIBUTION DEFICIENCY (EXCESS)</b>	<b><u>\$ -</u></b>
District's covered payroll	\$ 103,297,323
Contributions as a percentage of covered payroll	0.74%

\*The amounts presented for the fiscal year were determined as of the District's fiscal year end August 31.  
 Ten years of data is not available.



# **New Caney Independent School District**

## Notes to the Required Supplementary Information

### **Note 1. Budget**

#### **A. Budgetary Information**

Each school district in Texas is required by law to prepare annually a budget of anticipated revenues and expenditures for the general fund, debt service fund and the National School Breakfast and Lunch Program special revenue fund. The Texas Education Code requires the budget to be prepared not later than August 20 and adopted by August 31 of each year. The budgets are prepared on a basis of accounting that is used for reporting in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data reflected in the fund financial schedules:

1. Prior to August 20 of the preceding fiscal year, the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year beginning September 1. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
2. A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget after ten days' public notice of the meeting has been given.
3. Prior to September 1, the budget is formally approved and adopted by the Board.

The appropriated budget is prepared by fund and function. The District's campus/department heads may make transfers of appropriations within a campus or department. Transfers of appropriations between campuses or departments require the approval of the District's management. Increasing any one of the functional spending categories, or revenues object accounts and other resources require the approval of the Board. The legal level of budgetary control (i.e., the level at which expenditures may not legally exceed appropriations) is the function level within a fund. All annual appropriations lapse at fiscal year-end.

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**

## Supplementary Information

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Combining Balance Sheet  
Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds  
August 31, 2018

		210	211	212
Data Control Codes		Title I 1003 School Improvement	ESSA Title I Improving Basic Programs	Title-I Part C Migrant
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
1120	Current investments	-	-	-
1240	Due from other governments	248	281,678	5,008
1300	Inventories	-	-	-
1000	<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>\$ 248</u>	<u>\$ 281,678</u>	<u>\$ 5,008</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2160	Accrued wages payable	\$ -	\$ 82,059	\$ -
2170	Due to other funds	248	199,619	5,008
2300	Unearned revenue	-	-	-
2000	Total liabilities	248	281,678	5,008
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
3450	Restricted - grant funds	-	-	-
3545	Committed - other	-	-	-
3000	Total fund balances	-	-	-
4000	<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND FUND BALANCES</b>	<u>\$ 248</u>	<u>\$ 281,678</u>	<u>\$ 5,008</u>

224	225	226	240	244
IDEA-B Formula	IDEA-B Preschool Grant	IDEA-B High Cost Funds	National School Breakfast/Lunch Program	Career and Technical - Basic Grant
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 731,697	\$ -
-	-	-	699,991	-
202,115	7	-	373,170	21,477
-	-	-	98,920	-
<u>\$ 202,115</u>	<u>\$ 7</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 1,903,778</u>	<u>\$ 21,477</u>
\$ 124,339	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 217,054	\$ -
77,776	7	-	7,868	21,477
-	-	-	-	-
202,115	7	-	224,922	21,477
-	-	-	1,678,856	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	1,678,856	-
<u>\$ 202,115</u>	<u>\$ 7</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 1,903,778</u>	<u>\$ 21,477</u>

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Combining Balance Sheet  
Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds  
August 31, 2018

		255	263	289
<u>Data Control Codes</u>		<u>ESSA Title II Training and Recruiting</u>	<u>Title III, English Language Acquisition and Enhancement</u>	<u>Other Federally Funded Grants</u>
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
1120	Current investments	-	-	-
1240	Due from other governments	19,530	39,292	1,472,615
1300	Inventories	-	-	-
1000	<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>\$ 19,530</u>	<u>\$ 39,292</u>	<u>\$ 1,472,615</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2160	Accrued wages payable	\$ 310	\$ 15,958	\$ -
2170	Due to other funds	19,220	23,334	1,472,615
2300	Unearned revenue	-	-	-
2000	Total liabilities	19,530	39,292	1,472,615
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
3450	Restricted - grant funds	-	-	-
3545	Committed - other	-	-	-
3000	Total fund balances	-	-	-
4000	<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND FUND BALANCES</b>	<u>\$ 19,530</u>	<u>\$ 39,292</u>	<u>\$ 1,472,615</u>

385	397	410	429	460
Supplemental Visually Impaired	Advanced Placement Incentives	State Textbook Fund	Other State Funded Grants	New Caney High School Campus Activity
\$ -	\$ 5,184	\$ 97,433	\$ 14,354	\$ 37,469
-	-	-	-	5,514
-	-	-	1,750	-
-	-	-	-	-
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 5,184</u>	<u>\$ 97,433</u>	<u>\$ 16,104</u>	<u>\$ 42,983</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
-	-	-	-	-
-	5,184	97,433	16,104	-
-	5,184	97,433	16,104	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	42,983
-	-	-	-	42,983
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 5,184</u>	<u>\$ 97,433</u>	<u>\$ 16,104</u>	<u>\$ 42,983</u>

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Combining Balance Sheet  
Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds  
August 31, 2018

		461	462	463
Data Control Codes		White Oak M.S. Activity	Keefer Crossing M.S. Campus Activity	Porter Elementary Campus Activity
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 35,019	\$ 19,008	\$ 4,896
1120	Current investments	-	-	-
1240	Due from other governments	-	-	-
1300	Inventories	-	-	-
1000	<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>\$ 35,019</u>	<u>\$ 19,008</u>	<u>\$ 4,896</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2160	Accrued wages payable	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
2170	Due to other funds	-	-	-
2300	Unearned revenue	-	-	-
2000	Total liabilities	-	-	-
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
3450	Restricted - grant funds	-	-	-
3545	Committed - other	35,019	19,008	4,896
3000	Total fund balances	<u>35,019</u>	<u>19,008</u>	<u>4,896</u>
4000	<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND FUND BALANCES</b>	<u>\$ 35,019</u>	<u>\$ 19,008</u>	<u>\$ 4,896</u>



464	465	466	467	468
New Caney Elementary Campus Activity	Aiken Elementary Campus Activity	Robert Crippen Elementary Campus Activity	Kings Manor Elementary Campus Activity	The Learning Center Campus Activity
\$ 3,162	\$ 9,710	\$ 2,349	\$ 15,167	\$ 9,989
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
<u>\$ 3,162</u>	<u>\$ 9,710</u>	<u>\$ 2,349</u>	<u>\$ 15,167</u>	<u>\$ 9,989</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
-	-	-	-	-
3,162	9,710	2,349	15,167	9,989
<u>3,162</u>	<u>9,710</u>	<u>2,349</u>	<u>15,167</u>	<u>9,989</u>
<u>\$ 3,162</u>	<u>\$ 9,710</u>	<u>\$ 2,349</u>	<u>\$ 15,167</u>	<u>\$ 9,989</u>

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Combining Balance Sheet  
Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds  
August 31, 2018

		469	470	471
<u>Data Control Codes</u>		<u>Special Education Campus Activity</u>	<u>Bens Branch Elementary Campus Activity</u>	<u>Valley Ranch Elementary Campus Activity</u>
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 167	\$ 59,912	\$ 6,125
1120	Current investments	-	-	-
1240	Due from other governments	-	-	-
1300	Inventories	-	-	-
1000	<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>\$ 167</u>	<u>\$ 59,912</u>	<u>\$ 6,125</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2160	Accrued wages payable	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
2170	Due to other funds	-	-	-
2300	Unearned revenue	-	-	-
2000	Total liabilities	-	-	-
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
3450	Restricted - grant funds	-	-	-
3545	Committed - other	167	59,912	6,125
3000	Total fund balances	<u>167</u>	<u>59,912</u>	<u>6,125</u>
4000	<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND FUND BALANCES</b>	<u>\$ 167</u>	<u>\$ 59,912</u>	<u>\$ 6,125</u>

472	473	474	475	476
Sorters Mill Elementary Campus Activity	Sixth Grade Campus Activity	District Wide Activity	Physical Education Activity	Porter High School Campus Activity
\$ 3,361	\$ 15,875	\$ 7,300	\$ 116,719	\$ 55,210
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
<u>\$ 3,361</u>	<u>\$ 15,875</u>	<u>\$ 7,300</u>	<u>\$ 116,719</u>	<u>\$ 55,210</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
3,361	15,875	7,300	116,719	55,210
3,361	15,875	7,300	116,719	55,210
<u>\$ 3,361</u>	<u>\$ 15,875</u>	<u>\$ 7,300</u>	<u>\$ 116,719</u>	<u>\$ 55,210</u>

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Combining Balance Sheet  
Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds  
August 31, 2018

		477	478	479
Data Control Codes		Oakley Elementary Campus Activity	Porter High School Athletic Activity	Woodridge Forest M.S. Activity
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 4,768	\$ 55,296	\$ 13,512
1120	Current investments	-	-	-
1240	Due from other governments	-	-	-
1300	Inventories	-	-	-
1000	<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<u>\$ 4,768</u>	<u>\$ 55,296</u>	<u>\$ 13,512</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2160	Accrued wages payable	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
2170	Due to other funds	-	-	-
2300	Unearned revenue	-	-	-
2000	Total liabilities	-	-	-
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
3450	Restricted - grant funds	-	-	-
3545	Committed - other	4,768	55,296	13,512
3000	Total fund balances	<u>4,768</u>	<u>55,296</u>	<u>13,512</u>
4000	<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND FUND BALANCES</b>	<u>\$ 4,768</u>	<u>\$ 55,296</u>	<u>\$ 13,512</u>

480	481	495	499	
Dogwood Elementary Campus Activity	Brookewood Forest Elementary Campus Activity	Education Foundation Grant	Locally Funded Special Revenue Fund	Total Nonmajor Funds (See Exhibit C-1)
\$ 1,955	\$ 2,232	\$ 1,906	\$ 9	\$ 1,329,784
-	-	-	-	705,505
-	-	-	-	2,416,890
-	-	-	-	98,920
<u>\$ 1,955</u>	<u>\$ 2,232</u>	<u>\$ 1,906</u>	<u>\$ 9</u>	<u>\$ 4,551,099</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 439,720
-	-	-	-	1,827,172
-	-	-	-	118,721
-	-	-	-	2,385,613
-	-	-	-	1,678,856
1,955	2,232	1,906	9	486,630
1,955	2,232	1,906	9	2,165,486
<u>\$ 1,955</u>	<u>\$ 2,232</u>	<u>\$ 1,906</u>	<u>\$ 9</u>	<u>\$ 4,551,099</u>

**New Caney Independent School District**

Combining Statements of Revenues, Expenditures,  
and Changes in Fund Balances

Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds - Continued  
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

		210	211	212
Data Control Codes		Title I 1003 School Improvement	ESSA Title I Improving Basic Programs	Title-I Part C Migrant
<b>REVENUES</b>				
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
5800	State program revenues	-	-	-
5900	Federal program revenues	49,996	2,296,754	5,706
5020	Total revenues	49,996	2,296,754	5,706
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>				
Current:				
0011	Instruction	25,033	1,061,296	-
0012	Instructional resources and media services	-	-	-
0013	Curriculum and instructional staff development	24,963	1,023,736	-
0021	Instructional leadership	-	-	1,763
0023	School leadership	-	16,246	-
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	-	5,006	-
0032	Social work services	-	-	3,943
0033	Health services	-	-	-
0034	Student transportation	-	13,950	-
0035	Food services	-	-	-
0036	Extracurricular activities	-	-	-
0041	General administration	-	42,192	-
0052	Security and monitoring services	-	-	-
0061	Community services	-	134,328	-
Intergovernmental:				
0093	Payments related to shared services arrangements	-	-	-
6030	Total expenditures	49,996	2,296,754	5,706
1200	Net change in fund balances	-	-	-
0100	Fund balances - beginning	-	-	-
3000	<b>FUND BALANCES - ENDING</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>

224	225	226	240	244
IDEA-B Formula	IDEA-B Preschool Grant	IDEA-B High Cost Funds	National School Breakfast/Lunch Program	Career and Technical - Basic Grant
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 2,243,859	\$ -
-	-	-	259,376	-
2,171,799	6,850	35,473	6,878,266	171,322
2,171,799	6,850	35,473	9,381,501	171,322
1,436,024	6,850	35,473	-	160,223
-	-	-	-	-
11,294	-	-	-	11,099
-	-	-	-	-
120	-	-	-	-
568,177	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	8,942,292	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
2,184	-	-	-	-
154,000	-	-	-	-
2,171,799	6,850	35,473	8,942,292	171,322
-	-	-	439,209	-
-	-	-	1,239,647	-
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,678,856	\$ -

# New Caney Independent School District

Combining Statements of Revenues, Expenditures,  
and Changes in Fund Balances

Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds - Continued

For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

Data Control Codes		255	263	289
		ESSA Title II Training and Recruiting	Title III, English Language Acquisition and Enhancement	Other Federally Funded Grants
<b>REVENUES</b>				
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
5800	State program revenues	-	-	-
5900	Federal program revenues	331,402	472,995	1,520,118
5020	Total revenues	331,402	472,995	1,520,118
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>				
Current:				
0011	Instruction	-	340,848	1,478,325
0012	Instructional resources and media services	-	-	-
0013	Curriculum and instructional staff development	322,582	117,707	41,793
0021	Instructional leadership	940	40	-
0023	School leadership	2,258	-	-
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	-	-	-
0032	Social work services	-	-	-
0033	Health services	-	-	-
0034	Student transportation	-	-	-
0035	Food services	-	-	-
0036	Extracurricular activities	-	-	-
0041	General administration	5,622	-	-
0052	Security and monitoring services	-	-	-
0061	Community services	-	14,400	-
Intergovernmental:				
0093	Payments related to shared services arrangements	-	-	-
6030	Total expenditures	331,402	472,995	1,520,118
1200	Net change in fund balances	-	-	-
0100	Fund balances - beginning	-	-	-
3000	<b>FUND BALANCES - ENDING</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>



385	397	410	429	460
Supplemental Visually Impaired	Advanced Placement Incentives	State Textbook Fund	Other State Funded Grants	New Caney High School Campus Activity
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 68,643
11,707	2,850	1,510,523	9,160	-
-	-	-	-	-
11,707	2,850	1,510,523	9,160	68,643
10,435	-	1,510,523	9,160	5,548
-	-	-	-	1,861
1,272	2,850	-	-	401
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	41,430
-	-	-	-	1,060
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	16,508
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
11,707	2,850	1,510,523	9,160	66,808
-	-	-	-	1,835
-	-	-	-	41,148
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 42,983

**New Caney Independent School District**

Combining Statements of Revenues, Expenditures,  
and Changes in Fund Balances

Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds - Continued  
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

Data Control Codes		461	462	463
		White Oak M.S. Activity	Keefer Crossing M.S. Campus Activity	Porter Elementary Campus Activity
<b>REVENUES</b>				
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ 31,247	\$ 40,878	\$ 64,300
5800	State program revenues	-	-	-
5900	Federal program revenues	-	-	-
5020	Total revenues	31,247	40,878	64,300
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>				
Current:				
0011	Instruction	11,512	20,202	21,561
0012	Instructional resources and media services	3,167	3,789	9,406
0013	Curriculum and instructional staff development	365	-	306
0021	Instructional leadership	-	-	-
0023	School leadership	65	9,785	9,913
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	-	-	-
0032	Social work services	-	-	-
0033	Health services	-	50	-
0034	Student transportation	-	-	-
0035	Food services	-	-	-
0036	Extracurricular activities	3,550	10,662	19,960
0041	General administration	-	-	-
0052	Security and monitoring services	600	-	1,000
0061	Community services	-	-	-
Intergovernmental:				
0093	Payments related to shared services arrangements	-	-	-
6030	Total expenditures	19,259	44,488	62,146
1200	Net change in fund balances	11,988	(3,610)	2,154
0100	Fund balances - beginning	23,031	22,618	2,742
3000	<b>FUND BALANCES - ENDING</b>	<b>\$ 35,019</b>	<b>\$ 19,008</b>	<b>\$ 4,896</b>

464	465	466	467	468
New Caney Elementary Campus Activity	Aiken Elementary Campus Activity	Robert Crippen Elementary Campus Activity	Kings Manor Elementary Campus Activity	The Learning Center Campus Activity
\$ 43,312	\$ 48,529	\$ 49,040	\$ 65,892	\$ 2,869
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
43,312	48,529	49,040	65,892	2,869
10,080	17,266	27,270	10,098	-
8,247	7,595	4,694	9,328	-
110	-	-	1,408	-
-	-	-	-	-
8,576	14,733	4,534	10,626	5,450
-	-	-	-	1,116
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
14,491	14,644	16,789	19,008	-
-	-	-	-	-
72	-	-	1,100	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
41,576	54,238	53,287	51,568	6,566
1,736	(5,709)	(4,247)	14,324	(3,697)
1,426	15,419	6,596	843	13,686
\$ 3,162	\$ 9,710	\$ 2,349	\$ 15,167	\$ 9,989

**New Caney Independent School District**

Combining Statements of Revenues, Expenditures,  
and Changes in Fund Balances

Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds - Continued  
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

		469	470	471
Data Control Codes		Special Education Campus Activity	Bens Branch Elementary Campus Activity	Valley Ranch Elementary Campus Activity
<b>REVENUES</b>				
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ -	\$ 52,137	\$ 48,260
5800	State program revenues	-	-	-
5900	Federal program revenues	-	-	-
5020	Total revenues	-	52,137	48,260
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>				
Current:				
0011	Instruction	-	21,342	18,636
0012	Instructional resources and media services	-	14,910	13,048
0013	Curriculum and instructional staff development	-	-	33
0021	Instructional leadership	-	-	-
0023	School leadership	-	17,307	4,774
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	-	-	-
0032	Social work services	-	-	-
0033	Health services	-	-	-
0034	Student transportation	-	-	-
0035	Food services	-	-	-
0036	Extracurricular activities	-	6,491	13,025
0041	General administration	-	-	-
0052	Security and monitoring services	-	1,000	-
0061	Community services	-	-	-
Intergovernmental:				
0093	Payments related to shared services arrangements	-	-	-
6030	Total expenditures	-	61,050	49,516
1200	Net change in fund balances	-	(8,913)	(1,256)
0100	Fund balances - beginning	167	68,825	7,381
3000	<b>FUND BALANCES - ENDING</b>	<b>\$ 167</b>	<b>\$ 59,912</b>	<b>\$ 6,125</b>

472	473	474	475	476
Sorters Mill Elementary Campus Activity	Sixth Grade Campus Activity	District Wide Activity	Physical Education Activity	Porter High School Campus Activity
\$ 43,057	\$ 25,439	\$ -	\$ 107,279	\$ 55,007
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
43,057	25,439	-	107,279	55,007
13,221	15,322	-	-	3,685
8,643	6,019	-	-	-
250	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
26,753	3,815	4,144	-	39,812
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	192
1,222	949	-	89,346	7,796
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	3,080
-	-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-	-
50,089	26,105	4,144	89,346	54,565
(7,032)	(666)	(4,144)	17,933	442
10,393	16,541	11,444	98,786	54,768
\$ 3,361	\$ 15,875	\$ 7,300	\$ 116,719	\$ 55,210

**New Caney Independent School District**

Combining Statements of Revenues, Expenditures,  
and Changes in Fund Balances

Non-major Government Funds – Special Revenue Funds - Continued  
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

		477	478	479
Data Control Codes		Oakley Elementary Campus Activity	Porter High School Athletic Activity	Woodridge Forest M.S. Activity
<b>REVENUES</b>				
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ 51,245	\$ 120,413	\$ 77,982
5800	State program revenues	-	-	-
5900	Federal program revenues	-	-	-
5020	Total revenues	51,245	120,413	77,982
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>				
Current:				
0011	Instruction	15,729	-	14,296
0012	Instructional resources and media services	16,283	-	19,803
0013	Curriculum and instructional staff development	6,641	-	530
0021	Instructional leadership	-	-	-
0023	School leadership	12,543	-	10,521
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	-	-	-
0032	Social work services	-	-	-
0033	Health services	-	-	-
0034	Student transportation	-	-	-
0035	Food services	-	-	-
0036	Extracurricular activities	12,294	118,317	24,408
0041	General administration	-	-	-
0052	Security and monitoring services	-	-	-
0061	Community services	-	-	-
Intergovernmental:				
0093	Payments related to shared services arrangements	-	-	-
6030	Total expenditures	63,490	118,317	69,558
1200	Net change in fund balances	(12,245)	2,096	8,424
0100	Fund balances - beginning	17,013	53,200	5,088
3000	<b>FUND BALANCES - ENDING</b>	<b>\$ 4,768</b>	<b>\$ 55,296</b>	<b>\$ 13,512</b>

480	481	495	499	
Dogwood Elementary Campus Activity	Brookewood Forest Elementary Campus Activity	Education Foundation Grant	Locally Funded Special Revenue Fund	Total Nonmajor Funds (See Exhibit C-2)
\$ 41,748	\$ 5,000	\$ 113,314	\$ 8,826	\$ 3,408,276
-	-	-	-	1,793,616
-	-	-	-	13,940,681
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
41,748	5,000	113,314	8,826	19,142,573
11,185	-	92,994	8,817	6,412,954
5,774	-	6,226	-	138,793
-	-	-	-	1,567,340
-	-	-	-	2,743
20,590	2,768	3,484	-	270,247
-	-	10,124	-	585,483
-	-	-	-	3,943
-	-	-	-	50
-	-	-	-	13,950
-	-	-	-	8,942,484
3,157	-	-	-	392,617
-	-	-	-	47,814
-	-	-	-	6,852
-	-	-	-	150,912
-	-	-	-	154,000
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
40,706	2,768	112,828	8,817	18,690,182
1,042	2,232	486	9	452,391
913	-	1,420	-	1,713,095
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
\$ 1,955	\$ 2,232	\$ 1,906	\$ 9	\$ 2,165,486

# New Caney Independent School District

## Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable

For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

Year Ended August 31	Tax Rates		Assessed/Appraised Value For School Tax Purposes
	Maintenance	Debt Service	
2009 and Prior Years	\$ Various	\$ Various	\$ Various
2010	1.04	0.440	1,992,171,081
2011	1.04	0.500	2,019,501,299
2012	1.04	0.500	2,167,000,714
2013	1.04	0.500	2,310,948,896
2014	1.17	0.500	2,488,663,413
2015	1.17	0.500	2,733,588,922
2016	1.17	0.500	3,141,603,593
2017	1.17	0.500	3,528,444,491
2018 School year under audit	1.17	0.500	3,851,748,623

### 1000 TOTALS

9000 - Portion of row 1000 for taxes paid into tax increment zone under chapter 311, tax code



Beginning Balance 8/31/17	Current Year's Total Levy	Maintenance Collections	Debt Service Collections	Entire Year's Adjustments	Ending Balance 8/31/18
\$ 511,170	\$ -	\$ 19,833	\$ 7,629	\$ (100,758)	\$ 382,950
115,074	-	4,758	2,013	(2,453)	105,850
115,560	-	5,705	2,743	(659)	106,453
118,163	-	6,479	3,116	(1,235)	107,333
135,384	-	14,331	6,891	5,592	119,754
174,297	-	25,441	10,872	6,376	144,360
227,026	-	64,608	27,610	5,383	140,191
340,285	-	96,128	41,080	(8,101)	194,976
1,033,234	-	353,321	150,991	(146,481)	382,441
-	64,324,202	44,060,255	18,829,062	(412,010)	1,022,875
<u>\$ 2,770,193</u>	<u>\$ 64,324,202</u>	<u>\$ 44,650,859</u>	<u>\$ 19,082,007</u>	<u>\$ (654,346)</u>	<u>\$ 2,707,183</u>
		\$ -	\$ -		

**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes  
 in Fund Balance – Budget and Actual  
 National School Breakfast and Lunch Program  
 For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

**Exhibit J-2**

Data Control Codes		Budgeted Amounts		Actual	Variance with Final Budget Positive (Negative)
		Original	Final		
<b>REVENUES</b>					
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ 2,498,372	\$ 2,498,372	\$ 2,243,859	\$ (254,513)
5800	State program revenues	340,000	340,000	259,376	(80,624)
5900	Federal program revenues	6,846,570	6,846,570	6,878,266	31,696
5020	Total revenues	9,684,942	9,684,942	9,381,501	(303,441)
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>					
Current:					
0035	Food services	9,729,942	9,736,942	8,942,292	794,650
0051	Plant maintenance and operations	55,000	48,000	-	48,000
6030	Total expenditures	9,784,942	9,784,942	8,942,292	842,650
1200	Net change in fund balance	(100,000)	(100,000)	439,209	539,209
0100	Fund balance - beginning	1,239,647	1,239,647	1,239,647	-
3000	<b>FUND BALANCE - ENDING</b>	<b>\$ 1,139,647</b>	<b>\$ 1,139,647</b>	<b>\$ 1,678,856</b>	<b>\$ 539,209</b>

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes  
in Fund Balance – Budget and Actual  
Debt Service Fund  
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

**Exhibit J-3**

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual	Variance with Final Budget Positive (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
<b>REVENUES</b>					
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ 19,095,623	\$ 19,100,792	\$ 19,498,309	\$ 397,517
5800	State program revenues	6,773,861	6,773,861	5,987,382	(786,479)
5020	Total revenues	25,869,484	25,874,653	25,485,691	(388,962)
<b>EXPENDITURES</b>					
Debt Service:					
0071	Principal on long-term debt	7,678,410	7,678,410	7,678,410	-
0072	Interest on long-term debt	18,856,270	18,856,270	18,700,409	155,861
0073	Issuance costs and fees	-	351,595	351,594	1
6030	Total expenditures	26,534,680	26,886,275	26,730,413	155,862
1100	Excess (deficiency) of revenues over (under) expenditures	(665,196)	(1,011,622)	(1,244,722)	(233,100)
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)</b>					
7901	Issuance of refunding bonds	-	28,550,001	28,550,000	(1)
7916	Premium or discount on issuance of bonds	-	3,711,257	3,711,256	(1)
8940	Payment to bond refunding escrow agent	-	(31,914,832)	(31,914,832)	-
7080	Total other financing sources (uses)	-	346,426	346,424	(2)
1200	Net change in fund balance	(665,196)	(665,196)	(898,298)	(233,102)
0100	Fund balance - beginning	5,035,292	5,035,292	5,035,292	-
3000	<b>FUND BALANCE - ENDING</b>	<u>\$ 4,370,096</u>	<u>\$ 4,370,096</u>	<u>\$ 4,136,994</u>	<u>\$ (233,102)</u>

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**

## **Overall Compliance, Internal Control Section and Federal Awards**

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**



Austin | Conroe | Dallas | Fort Worth | Houston  
Los Angeles | Midland | New York City | San Antonio

**Independent Auditor's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with *Government Auditing Standards***

To the Board of Trustees of  
New Caney Independent School District  
New Caney, Texas

We have audited, in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of New Caney Independent School District (the District) as of and for the year ended August 31, 2018 and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated January 14, 2019.

***Internal Control over Financial Reporting***

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered the District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control over financial reporting was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control over financial reporting that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control over financial reporting that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

***Compliance and Other Matters***

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit and, accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.

Weaver and Tidwell, L.L.P.  
1406 Wilson Road, Suite 100 / Conroe, Texas 77304  
Main: 936.756.8127 / Fax: 936.756.8132  
**CPAs AND ADVISORS | WEAVER.COM**

The Board of Trustees of  
New Caney Independent School District

**Purpose of this Report**

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the entity's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

*Weaver and Tidwell, L.L.P.*

WEAVER AND TIDWELL, L.L.P.

Conroe, Texas  
January 14, 2019





**Independent Auditor’s Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program and Report on Internal Control over Compliance in Accordance with the Uniform Guidance**

The Board of Trustees of  
New Caney Independent School District  
New Caney, Texas

**Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program**

We have audited New Caney Independent School District’s (the District) compliance with the types of compliance requirements described in the *OMB Compliance Supplement* that could have a direct and material effect on each of the District’s major federal programs for the year ended August 31, 2018. The District’s major federal programs are identified in the summary of auditor’s results section of the accompanying schedule of findings and questioned costs.

***Management’s Responsibility***

Management is responsible for compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of its federal awards applicable to its federal programs.

***Auditor’s Responsibility***

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on compliance for each of the District’s major federal programs based on our audit of the types of compliance requirements referred to above. We conducted our audit of compliance in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and the audit requirements of Title 2 U.S. *Code of Federal Regulations* (CFR) Part 200, *Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (Uniform Guidance). Those standards and the Uniform Guidance require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether noncompliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on a major federal program occurred. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence about the District’s compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures, as we considered necessary in the circumstances.

We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion on compliance for each major federal program. However, our audit does not provide a legal determination of the District’s compliance.

***Opinion on Each Major Federal Program***

In our opinion, the District complied, in all material respects, with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on each of its major federal programs for the year ended August 31, 2018.

## Report on Internal Control over Compliance

Management of the District is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above. In planning and performing our audit of compliance, we considered the District's internal control over compliance with the types of requirements that could have a direct and material effect on each major federal program to determine the auditing procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing an opinion on compliance for each major federal program and to test and report on internal control over compliance in accordance with the Uniform Guidance, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control over compliance.

*A deficiency in internal control over compliance* exists when the design or operation of a control over compliance does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program on a timely basis. *A material weakness in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies in internal control over compliance, such that there is a reasonable possibility that material noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. *A significant deficiency in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program that is less severe than a material weakness in internal control over compliance, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control over compliance was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control over compliance that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. We did not identify any deficiencies in internal control over compliance that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

The purpose of this report on internal control over compliance is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over compliance and the results of that testing based on the requirements of the Uniform Guidance. Accordingly, this report is not suitable for any other purpose.

*Weaver and Tidwell, L.L.P.*

WEAVER AND TIDWELL, L.L.P.

Conroe, Texas  
January 14, 2019

**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs  
 For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

**Section 1. Summary of Auditor's Results**

**Financial Statements**

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| 1. Type of auditor's report issued   | Unmodified    |
| 2. Internal control over financial reporting:  |               |
| a. Material weakness (es) identified?  | No            |
| b. Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses? | None reported |
| 3. Noncompliance material to the financial statements noted?                                 | No            |

**Federal Awards**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. Internal control over major programs:  |   |
| a. Material weakness (es) identified?   | No  |
| b. Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses?          | None reported   |
| 5. Type of auditor's report issued on compliance with major programs?                                 | Unmodified  |
| 6. Any audit findings disclosed that are required to be reported in accordance with Uniform Guidance? | No  |
| 7. Identification of major programs   | 84.010A ESSA Title I, Part A<br>84.938 Hurricane Recovery Grant |
| 8. Dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B federal programs                    | \$750,000   |
| 9. Auditee qualified as a low-risk auditee  | Yes   |

**Section 2. Financial Statement Findings**

None reported

**Section 3. Federal Award Findings and Questioned Costs**

None reported

**New Caney Independent School District**  
Summary Schedule of Prior Audit Findings  
For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

**Prior Year Findings**

None reported

**New Caney Independent School District**  
**Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards**  
**For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018**

**Exhibit K-1**

(1) Federal Grantor/ Pass-Through Grantor/ Program Title	(2) Federal CFDA Number	(2A) Pass-Through Entity Identifying Number	(3) Federal Expenditures
<b><u>U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION</u></b>			
Passed Through State Department of Education:			
ESEA Title I, Part A - Improving Basic Programs	84.010A	18610101170908	\$ 2,296,754
Title I 1003 School Improvement	84.010A	18610123170908	49,996
Total 84.010A			2,346,750
Special Education Cluster (IDEA):			
IDEA - Part B, Formula	84.027A	186600011709086000	2,171,799
IDEA - Part B, Discretionary	84.027A	66001806	35,473
IDEA - Part B, Preschool	84.173A	186610011709086000	6,850
Total Special Education Cluster (IDEA)			2,214,122
Career and Technical - Basic Grant			
Career and Technical - Career Clusters	84.048A	18420006170908	100,812
	84.048A	1842055711027	70,510
Total 84.048A			171,322
Title III, Part A - English Language Acquisition and Language Enhancement	84.365A	18671001170908	472,995
Title IV, Part A, Subpart 1	84.424A	18680101170908	38,154
Summer School LEP	84.369A	69551702	17,120
ESEA Title II, Part A - Teacher and Principal Training and Recruiting	84.367A	18694501170908	331,402
EIA Hurricane Recovery	84.938C	51271901	1,460,589
Passed Through Nat. Institute For Excellence in Teaching: Support Effective Educator Development	84.367D	N/A*	4,255
Passed Through Region VI Education Service Center: Title I, Part C - Migrant	84.011A	18615001236950	5,706
<b>TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION</b>			<b>7,062,415</b>
<b><u>U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE</u></b>			
Child Nutrition Cluster:			
Passed Through State Department of Agriculture - Non-Cash Assistance:			
National School Lunch Program	10.555	00835	530,944
Passed Through State Department of Education - Cash Assistance:			
School Breakfast Program	10.553	71401801	1,521,216
National School Lunch Program	10.555	71301801	4,826,106
Total Child Nutrition Cluster			6,878,266
Passed Through Montgomery County, Texas:			
Forest Service Schools and Roads Cluter:			
Schools and Roads - Grants to States (Forests)	10.665	N/A	1,760
Schools and Roads - Grants to Counties (Minerals)	10.666	N/A	3,550
Total Forest Service Schools and Roads Cluter			5,310
<b>TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE</b>			<b>6,883,576</b>
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS</b>			<b>\$ 13,945,991</b>

\* N/A indicates that a pass-through entity identifying number was not available from the pass-through grantor.

The Notes to the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards are an integral part of this schedule.

**This Page Intentionally Left Blank**

# New Caney Independent School District

## Notes to the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards

### Basis of Presentation

The accompanying schedule of expenditures of federal awards includes the federal grant activity of the District and is presented on the modified accrual basis of accounting. The information in this schedule is presented in accordance with the requirements of Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 and *Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 200, Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards (Uniform Guidance)*. Therefore, some amounts presented in this schedule may differ from amounts presented in, or used in the preparation of the basic financial statements. National School Lunch Program non-cash commodities are recorded at their estimated market value at the time of donation. The District has elected not to use the 10% de minimis indirect cost rate as allowed under Uniform Guidance. Presented below is a reconciliation of federal revenues:

Total expenditures of federal awards per Exhibit K-1	\$ 13,945,991
General Fund - federal revenue	
SHARS	1,218,537
ROTC	112,484
MAC	13,834
	<hr/>
<b>Total federal revenues per exhibit C-2</b>	<b><u><u>\$ 15,290,846</u></u></b>

**New Caney Independent School District**  
 Schedule of Required Responses to Selected  
 School FIRST Indicators (Unaudited)  
 For the Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018

**Exhibit L-1**

<b>Data Control Codes</b>		<b>Responses</b>
SF2	Were there any disclosures in the Annual Financial Report and/or other sources of information concerning nonpayment of any terms of any debt agreement at fiscal year end?	No
SF4	Was there an unmodified opinion in the Annual Financial Report on the financial statements as a whole?	Yes
SF5	Did the Annual Financial Report disclose any instances of material weaknesses in internal controls over financial reporting and compliance for local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF6	Was there any disclosure in the Annual Financial Report of material noncompliance for grants, contracts, and laws related to local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF7	Did the school district make timely payments to the Teachers Retirement System (TRS), Texas Workforce Commission (TWC), Internal Revenue Service (IRS), and other government agencies?	Yes
SF8	Did the school district not receive an adjusted repayment schedule for more than one fiscal year for an over allocation of Foundation School Program (FSP) funds as a result of a financial hardship?	Yes
SF10	Total accumulated accretion on CABs included in government-wide financial statements at fiscal year-end?	\$ 1,697,803
SF11	Net pension assets (1920) at fiscal year-end.	\$ -
SF12	Net pension liabilities (2540) at fiscal year-end.	\$ 29,658,134





Financial Advisory Services  
Provided By:

